

क्षेत्र कर्मचारियों के लिए अनुदेश

Instructions to Field Staff

खण्ड - I

Volume – I

अभिकल्प, संकल्पनायें, परिभाषायें और क्रियाविधियां
Design, Concepts, Definitions and Procedures

समाजार्थिक सर्वेक्षण

SOCIO-ECONOMIC SURVEY

रा.प्र.स. 65वां दौर

NSS 65TH ROUND

(जुलाई 2008 - जून 2009)

(JULY 2008 – JUNE 2009)



राष्ट्रीय प्रतिदर्श सर्वेक्षण संगठन

National Sample Survey Organisation

सांख्यिकी और कार्यक्रम कार्यान्वयन मंत्रालय

Ministry of Statistics and Programme Implementation

भारत सरकार

Government of India

मई 2008

May 2008

CONTENTS

	Title	Page No.
Chapter One	: Introduction: Concepts, Definitions and Procedures	A1 - A28
Chapter Two	: Schedule 0.0: List of Households	B1 - B26
Chapter Three	: Schedule 21.1: Domestic Tourism	C1 - C34
Chapter Four	: Schedule 1.2: Housing Condition	D1 - D31
Chapter Five	: Schedule 0.21: Particulars of Slum	E1 - E9
Appendix-I	: List of FOD Sub-Regions	F1 - F14
Appendix-II	: List of NSS Regions and their Composition	F15 - F22

Chapter One

Introduction: Concepts, Definitions and Procedures

1.0 Introduction

1.0.1 The National Sample Survey (NSS), set up by the Government of India in 1950 to collect socio-economic data employing scientific sampling methods, will start its sixty-fifth round from 1st July 2008. The survey will continue up to 30th June 2009.

1.1 Outline of Survey Programme

1.1.1 **Subject Coverage:** The 65th round (July 2008 – June 2009) of NSS is earmarked for survey on ‘Domestic Tourism’, ‘Housing Condition’ and ‘Urban Slums’. NSS 54th round (January – June 1999) and 43rd round (July 1987 – June 1988) were the two latest rounds where certain data on tourism/ travel habits were collected. Detailed information on housing condition was last collected in NSS 58th round (July – December 2002), prior to which such information were collected during the 49th round of NSS (January – June 1993). Survey on urban slums was last conducted during NSS 58th round.

1.1.2 **Geographical coverage:** The survey will cover the whole of the Indian Union *except* (i) interior villages of Nagaland situated beyond five kilometres of the bus route and (ii) villages in Andaman and Nicobar Islands which remain inaccessible throughout the year.

For Leh (Ladakh) and Kargil districts of Jammu & Kashmir there will be no separate sample first-stage units (FSUs) for ‘central sample’. For these two districts, sample FSUs drawn as ‘state sample’ will also be treated as central sample. The state directorate of economics and statistics (DES) will provide a copy of the filled-in schedules to Data Processing Division of NSSO for processing.

1.1.3 **Period of survey and work programme:** The period of survey will be of one year duration starting on 1st July 2008 and ending on 30th June 2009. The survey period of this round will be divided into four sub-rounds of three months’ duration each as follows:

- sub-round 1 : July - September 2008
- sub-round 2 : October - December 2008
- sub-round 3 : January - March 2009
- sub-round 4 : April - June 2009

In each of these four sub-rounds equal number of sample villages/ blocks (FSUs) will be allotted for survey with a view to ensuring uniform spread of sample FSUs over the entire survey period. Attempt should be made to survey each of the FSUs during the sub-round to which it is allotted. *Because of the arduous field conditions, this restriction need not be strictly enforced in Andaman and Nicobar Islands, Lakshadweep and rural areas of Arunachal Pradesh and Nagaland.*

1.1.4 **Schedules of enquiry:** During this round, the following schedules of enquiry will be canvassed:

Schedule 0.0	: list of households
Schedule 21.1	: domestic tourism
Schedule 1.2	: housing condition
Schedule 0.21	: particulars of slum

1.1.5 Participation of States: In this round all the States and Union Territories except Andaman & Nicobar Islands, Chandigarh, Dadra & Nagar Haveli and Lakshadweep are participating. The following is the matching pattern of the participating States/ UTs.

Nagaland (U)	: triple
J & K , Manipur & Delhi	: double
Maharashtra (U)	: one and half
Gujarat	: less than equal
Remaining States/ UTs	: equal

1.2 Contents of Volume I

1.2.0 The present volume contains five chapters. Chapter one, besides giving an overview of the whole survey operation, discusses the concepts and definitions of certain important technical terms to be used in the survey. It also describes in detail the sample design and the procedure of selection of households adopted for this round. Instructions for filling in Schedule 0.0, Schedule 21.1, Schedule 1.2 and Schedule 0.21 are given in Chapters Two to Five respectively.

1.3 Sample Design

1.3.1 Outline of sample design: A stratified multi-stage design has been adopted for the 65th round survey. The first stage units (FSU) will be the 2001 census villages (Panchayat wards in case of Kerala) in the rural sector and Urban Frame Survey (UFS) blocks in the urban sector. For towns with no UFS frame available (to be referred as 'non-UFS towns'), each town will be treated as an FSU. The ultimate stage units (USU) will be households in both the sectors. In case of large FSUs, one intermediate stage of sampling will be the selection of two hamlet-groups (hgs)/ sub-blocks (sbs) from each rural/ urban FSU.

1.3.2 Sampling Frame for First Stage Units: *For the rural sector*, the list of 2001 census villages (henceforth the term 'village' would mean Panchayat wards for Kerala) will constitute the sampling frame. *For the urban sector*, the list of latest available UFS blocks will be considered as the sampling frame. For non-UFS towns, the list of towns as per Census 2001 will be the sampling frame.

1.3.3 Stratification for FSU:

1.3.3.1 Rural sector: All villages of a district will form a separate stratum.

1.3.3.2 Urban sector: In the urban sector, strata will be formed within each NSS region on the basis of size class of towns as per Census 2001 town population. This departure has been made in the stratification principle in order to facilitate generation of town-class wise estimates to satisfy the requirements of the user ministries. The stratum numbers and their composition (within each region) are given below.

Stratum	Composition (within NSS region)
---------	---------------------------------

1	All towns with population < 50,000
2	All towns with population 50,000 – 99,999
3	All towns with population 1,00,000 – 4,99,999
4	All towns with population 5,00,000 – 9,99,999
5, 6,	Each million plus city

1.3.3.3 The non-UFS towns, if any, within an NSS region will be grouped together to form separate urban strata as per the size classes (in terms of population) specified in the previous paragraph.

1.3.4 **Sub-stratification:** There will be no sub-stratification in the rural sector and for strata corresponding to non-UFS towns. However, to net adequate number of slums, for all other urban strata, each stratum will be divided into 2 sub-strata as follows:

sub-stratum 1: all UFS blocks having area type ‘slum area’

sub-stratum 2: remaining UFS blocks

1.3.5 **Total sample size (FSUs):** 12928 FSUs for central sample and 13996 FSUs for state sample have been allocated at all-India level.

1.3.6 **Allocation of total sample to States and UTs:** The total number of sample FSUs is allocated to the States and UTs in proportion to population as per census 2001 subject to a minimum sample allocation to each State/ UT. While doing so, the resource availability in terms of number of field investigators has been kept in view.

1.3.7 **Allocation of State/ UT level sample to rural and urban sectors:** State/ UT level sample is allocated between two sectors in proportion to population as per *census 2001* with 1.5 weightage to urban sector subject to the restriction that urban sample size for bigger states like Maharashtra, Tamil Nadu etc. should not exceed the rural sample size. A minimum of 4 FSUs is allocated to each state/ UT separately for rural and urban areas. Further the State level allocations for both rural and urban have been adjusted marginally in a few cases to ensure that each stratum gets a minimum allocation of 4 FSUs.

The sample sizes by sector for each State/ UT are given in Table 1 at the end of this Chapter.

1.3.8 **Allocation to strata/ sub-strata:** Within each sector of a State/ UT, the respective sample size is allocated to the different strata in proportion to the stratum population as per census 2001. Allocations at stratum level are adjusted to multiples of 4 with a minimum sample size of 4. Stratum-level sample size in the urban sector pertaining to strata belonging to UFS towns will be further allocated to the 2 sub-strata in proportion to the number of UFS blocks in them with double weightage to sub-stratum 1, subject to a minimum allocation of 4 to each of the two sub-strata.

1.3.9 **Selection of FSUs:** As per census arrangement the villages will be arranged and sample villages will be selected by circular systematic sampling with probability proportional to population for all rural strata. For each of urban strata (and sub-strata wherever applicable), the towns within the stratum will be arranged in ascending order of population; then FSUs will be selected by circular systematic sampling with equal probability for UFS towns and with probability proportional to population for non-UFS towns. Within each stratum/ sub-stratum, multiple of 4 FSUs will be selected. Both rural and

urban samples will be drawn in the form of two independent sub-samples and equal number of samples will be allocated among the four sub rounds.

1.3.10 Selection of hamlet-groups/ sub-blocks - important steps

1.3.10.1 Proper identification of the FSU boundaries: The first task of the field investigators is to ascertain the exact boundaries of the sample FSU as per its identification particulars given in the sample list. For urban samples, the boundaries of each FSU may be identified by referring to the map corresponding to the frame code specified in the sample list (even though map of the block for a latter period in case of UFS might be available).

1.3.10.2 Criterion for hamlet-group/ sub-block formation: After identification of the FSU, it is to be determined whether listing will be done in the whole sample FSU or not. In case the population of the selected FSU is found to be 1200 or more, it will be divided into a suitable number (say, D) of 'hamlet-groups' in the rural sector and 'sub-blocks' in the urban sector as stated below.

approximate present population of the sample FSU	no. of hgs/sbs to be formed
less than 1200 (no hamlet-groups/sub-blocks)	1
1200 to 1799	3
1800 to 2399	4
2400 to 2999	5
3000 to 3599	6
.....and so on	

For rural areas of Himachal Pradesh, Sikkim, Uttarakhand and Poonch, Rajouri, Udhampur, Doda, Leh (Ladakh), Kargil districts of Jammu and Kashmir and Idukki district of Kerala, the number of hamlet-groups will be formed as follows:

approximate present population of the sample village	no. of hgs to be formed
less than 600 (no hamlet-groups)	1
600 to 899	3
900 to 1199	4
1200 to 1499	5
.....and so on	

1.3.10.3 Formation and selection of hamlet-groups/ sub-blocks: In case hamlet-groups/ sub-blocks are to be formed in the sample FSU, the same should be done by more or less equalizing population (details are in Chapter Two). Note that while doing so, it is to be ensured that the hamlet-groups/ sub-blocks formed are clearly identifiable in terms of physical landmarks.

Two hamlet-groups (hg)/ sub-blocks (sb) will be selected from a large FSU wherever hamlet-groups/ sub-blocks have been formed in the following manner – one hg/ sb with maximum percentage share of population will always be selected and termed as hg/ sb 1; one more hg/ sb will be selected from the remaining hg's/ sb's by simple random sampling (SRS)

and termed as hg/ sb 2. Listing and selection of the households will be done independently in the two selected hamlet-groups/ sub-blocks. The FSUs without hg/ sb formation will be treated as sample hg/ sb number 1. It is to be noted that if more than one hg/ sb have same maximum percentage share of population, the one among them which is listed first in block 4.2 of schedule 0.0 will be treated as hg/ sb 1.

1.4 Survey on urban slums: Information on each slum, notified or non-notified, located within the boundaries of the entire selected first stage unit (FSU) will be collected through schedule 0.21. In case of sub-block formation/ selection, all the slums located within the boundaries of the entire FSU will be considered for survey irrespective of the sub-blocks selected.

1.5 Listing of households: Having determined the hamlet-groups/ sub-blocks, i.e. area(s) to be considered for listing, the next step is to list all the households (including those found to be temporarily locked after ascertaining the temporariness of locking of households through local enquiry). The hamlet-group/ sub-block with sample hg/ sb number 1 will be considered for listing first, to be followed by the listing of households within the sample hg/ sb number 2.

1.6 Formation of second stage strata and allocation of households

Two cut-off points 'A' and 'B' (in Rs.) are determined from NSS 61st round data for **each NSS region** for urban areas in such a way that top 30% of the population have MPCE equal to or more than 'B' and bottom 30% of the population have MPCE equal to or less than A.

The values of A and B for each NSS Region are given in Table 2 of Chapter two, (page B-9).

1.6.1: All the households listed in the selected FSU/ hamlet-group/ sub-block will be stratified into five second stage strata (SSS) for schedule 21.1 and into three SSS for schedule 1.2. Composition of the SSS and number of households to be surveyed from different SSS for the two schedules of enquiry will be as follows:

SSS	composition of SSS within a sample FSU	number of households to be surveyed	
		FSU without hg/sb formation	FSU with hg/sb formation (for each hg/sb)

schedule 21.1

rural

SSS 1:	households having pucca dwelling structure and having at least one member, who performed at least one overnight trip during last 30 days	4	2
--------	--	---	---

SSS 2: households not having pucca dwelling structure and having at least one member, who performed at least one overnight trip during last 30 days	2	1
SSS 3: remaining households having pucca dwelling structure and having at least one member, who performed at least one same day trip during last 30 days	2	1
SSS 4: remaining households not having pucca dwelling structure and having at least one member, who performed at least one same day trip during last 30 days	2	1
SSS5: other households	2	1
urban		
SSS 1: households with MPCE \geq B and having at least one member, who performed at least one overnight trip during last 30 days	4	2
SSS 2: households with MPCE $<$ B and having at least one member, who performed at least one overnight trip during last 30 days	2	1
SSS 3: remaining households with MPCE \geq B and having at least one member, who performed at least one same day trip during last 30 days	2	1
SSS 4: remaining households with MPCE $<$ B and having at least one member, who performed at least one same day trip during last 30 days	2	1
SSS 5: other households	2	1
schedule 1.2		
rural		
SSS 1: households having pucca dwelling structure	4	2
SSS 2: households having semi-pucca dwelling structure	4	2
SSS 3: other households	4	2

urban		
SSS 1: households having MPCE of top 30% of urban population (MPCE \geq B)	4	2
SSS 2: households having MPCE of middle 40% of urban population (A < MPCE < B)	4	2
SSS 3: households having MPCE of bottom 30% of urban population (MPCE \leq A)	4	2

1.7 Selection of households: From each SSS the sample households for each of the two schedules will be selected by SRSWOR. If a household is selected both for schedule 21.1 and schedule 1.2 only schedule 21.1 will be canvassed in that household and the household will be replaced by next household in the frame for schedule 1.2.

1.8 Shortfall of households to be compensated: For any schedule, shortfall in required number of households in the frame of any second-stage stratum (SSS) will be compensated from other SSS. While making such compensation, in case of schedule 21.1, the general principle will be to give top priority to the strata of households involving overnight trip and then to the strata of households involving same day trip. Within each of the above two broad categories, the stratum comprising households having pucca structure (rural)/ high MPCE (urban) will get the first preference. In case of schedule 1.2, the priority will be given to the stratum of households having pucca structure (rural)/ high MPCE (urban). The households not having pucca or semi-pucca structure (rural)/ low MPCE (urban) will get the last priority. To clarify further, for Schedule 21.1 where there are 5 SSS, shortfall of households in the frame of any particular SSS will be compensated from the same SSS of the other hg/ sb or from the other SSS of the same or other hg/ sb where additional household(s) are available. The procedure is as follows:

step 1: Allocate the required number of households to each SSS wherever possible and identify the SSS having shortfall.

step 2: In case of hg/ sb formation, compensate from the same SSS of the other hg/ sb if available for all the SSS having shortfall. If the shortfall still remains identify the SSS having shortfall and go to Step 3.

step 3: Find the SSS where additional households are available following the priority order of SSS 1, SSS 2, SSS 3, SSS 4 & SSS 5 and compensate.

The table given below will be useful for deciding the SSS from which the compensation is to be made.

SSS having shortfall (Schedule 21.1)	priority order of SSS for compensation
1	2, 3, 4, 5
2	1, 3, 4, 5
3	1, 2, 4, 5
4	1, 2, 3, 5
5	1, 2, 3, 4

To illustrate further, if there is hg/ sb formation, for each SSS as per priority order, compensation may be made from the hg/ sb where shortfall occurs, failing which from other hg/ sb and so on.

For example, if shortfall in SSS 1 of hg/ sb 2 exists details of step 2 & step 3 are given below.

step 2: Try to compensate the shortfall of SSS 1 of hg/ sb 2 from SSS 1 of hg/ sb 1.

If the shortfall still remains in SSS 1 of hg/ sb 2

step 3: try to compensate from SSS 2 of hg/ sb 2, failing which try from SSS 2 of hg/ sb 1. If the shortfall still remains then try from SSS 3 of hg/ sb 2, failing which try from SSS 3 of hg/sb 1 and so on.

For **Schedule 1.2** the procedure will be same except that choice will be limited to SSS 1, SSS 2 and SSS 3 only.

The resulting number of households (h) for each SSS will be entered at the top of relevant column(s) of block 5 and also in col.(6) against the relevant SSS × hg/ sb number of block 6 of schedule 0.0.

Example for Schedule 21.1

(a) FSU without hg/ sb formation

Example 1

SSS	H	Step 1	Step 3	h
1	2	2*		2
2	1	1*		1
3	3	2	1	3
4	6	2	1+1	4
5	40	2		2
total	52	9	3	12
shortfall	–	3	0	×

(b) FSU with hg/ sb formation

Example 2

hg/ sb	SSS	H	Step 1	Step 2	Step 3	h
1	1	0	0*			0
	2	2	1		1	2
	3	1	1			1
	4	0	0*			0
	5	125	1		1	2
	total	128	3		2	5
2	1	3	2	1		3
	2	1	1			1
	3	1	1			1
	4	0	0*			0
	5	115	1		1	2
	total	120	5	1	1	7
total		248	8	1	3	12
shortfall		–	4	3	0	-

* indicates the SSS having shortfall

1.9 Concepts and Definitions:

1.9.0 Important concepts and definitions used in different schedules of this survey are explained below.

1.9.1 **Population coverage:** The following rules regarding the population to be covered are to be remembered in listing of households and persons:

1. Under-trial prisoners in jails and indoor patients of hospitals, nursing homes etc., are to be excluded, but residential staff therein will be listed while listing is done in such institutions. The persons of the first category will be considered as normal members of their parent households and will be counted there. Convicted prisoners undergoing sentence will be outside the coverage of the survey.
2. Floating population, i.e., persons without any normal residence will not be listed. But households residing in open space, roadside shelter, under a bridge, etc., more or less regularly in the same place, will be listed.
3. Foreign nationals will not be listed, nor their domestic servants, if by definition the latter belong to the foreign national's household. If, however, a foreign national becomes an Indian citizen for all practical purposes, he or she will be covered.
4. Persons residing in barracks of military and paramilitary forces (like police, BSF, etc.) will be kept outside the survey coverage due to difficulty in conduct of survey therein. However, civilian population residing in their neighbourhood, including the family quarters of service personnel, are to be covered. Permission for this may have to be obtained from appropriate authorities.
5. Orphanages, rescue homes, *ashrams* and vagrant houses are outside the survey coverage. However, persons staying in old age homes, students staying in *ashrams*/hostels and the residential staff (other than monks/ nuns) of these ashrams may be listed. For orphanages, although orphans are not to be listed, the persons looking after them and staying there may be considered for listing.

1.9.2 **House:** Every structure, tent, shelter, etc. is a house irrespective of its use. It may be used for residential or non-residential purpose or both or even may be vacant.

1.9.3 **Household:** A group of persons normally living together and taking food from a common kitchen will constitute a household. It will include temporary stay-aways (those whose total period of absence from the household is expected to be less than 6 months) but exclude temporary visitors and guests (expected total period of stay less than 6 months). Even though the determination of the actual composition of a household will be left to the judgment of the head of the household, the following procedures will be adopted as guidelines.

(i) Each inmate (including residential staff) of a hostel, mess, hotel, boarding and lodging house, etc., will constitute a single-member household. If, however, a group of persons among them normally pool their income for spending, they will together be treated as forming a single household. For example, a family living in a hotel will be treated as a single household.

(ii) In deciding the composition of a household, more emphasis is to be placed on 'normally living together' than on 'ordinarily taking food from a common kitchen'. In case the place of residence of a person is different from the place of boarding, he or she will be treated as a member of the household with whom he or she resides.

(iii) A resident employee, or domestic servant, or a paying guest (but not just a tenant in the household) will be considered as a member of the household with whom he or she resides even though he or she is not a member of the same family.

(iv) When a person sleeps in one place (say, in a shop or in a room in another house because of space shortage) but usually takes food with his or her family, he or she should be treated not as a single member household but as a member of the household in which other members of his or her family stay.

(v) If a member of a family (say, a son or a daughter of the head of the family) stays elsewhere (say, in hostel for studies or for any other reason), he/ she will not be considered as a member of his/ her parent's household. However, he/ she will be listed as a single member household if the hostel is listed.

1.9.4 Household size: The number of members of a household is its size.

1.9.5 Pucca structure: A pucca structure is one whose walls and roofs are made of pucca materials such as cement, concrete, oven burnt bricks, hollow cement / ash bricks, stone, stone blocks, jack boards (cement plastered reeds), iron, zinc or other metal sheets, timber, tiles, slate, corrugated iron, asbestos cement sheet, veneer, plywood, artificial wood of synthetic material and poly vinyl chloride (PVC) material.

1.9.6 Katcha structure: A structure which has walls and roof made of non-pucca materials is regarded as a katcha structure. Non-pucca materials include unburnt bricks, bamboo, mud, grass, leaves, reeds, thatch, etc. Katcha structures can be of the following two types:

(a) **Unserviceable katcha structure** includes all structures with thatch walls and thatch roof, i.e., walls made of grass, leaves, reeds, etc. and roof of a similar material and

(b) **Serviceable katcha structure** includes all katcha structures other than unserviceable katcha structures.

1.9.7 Semi-pucca structure: A structure which cannot be classified as a pucca or a katcha structure as per definition is a semi-pucca structure. Such a structure will have either the walls or the roof but not both, made of pucca materials.

1.9.8 Building: Building is a free-standing structure comprising one or more rooms or other spaces covered by a roof and usually enclosed within external walls or dividing walls which extend from the foundation to the roof. Dividing walls refer to the walls of adjoining buildings, i.e., dividing walls of a row of houses. These houses are practically independent of one another and likely to have been built at different times and owned by different persons. If more than one physically separated structure constitute one living unit, all of them together also form a building. Usually, building will have four external walls. But in some areas the nature of building construction is such that it has no walls. Instead, it has a roof which almost touches the ground and it is provided with an entrance. Such structures

and also structures standing only on pillars will also be treated as buildings for the purpose of the survey.

1.9.9 Dwelling unit: It is the accommodation availed of by a household for its residential purpose. It may be an entire structure or a part thereof or consisting of more than one structure. There may be cases of more than one household occupying a single structure such as those living in independent flats or sharing a single housing unit, in which case, there will be as many dwelling units as the number of households sharing the structure. There may also be cases of one household occupying more than one structure (i.e. detached structures for sitting, sleeping, cooking, bathing etc) for its housing accommodation. In this case, all the structures together constitute a single dwelling unit. In general, a dwelling unit consists of living room, kitchen, store, bath, latrine, garage, open and closed veranda etc. A structure or a portion thereof used exclusively for non-residential purposes or let out to other households does not form part of the dwelling unit of the household under consideration. However, a portion of a structure used for both residential and non-residential purposes is treated as part of the dwelling unit except when the use of such portion for residential purpose is very nominal. The dwelling unit covers all pucca, semi-pucca and katcha structures used by a household. Households living more or less regularly under bridges, in pipes, under staircase, in purely temporary flimsy improvisations built by the road side (which are liable to be removed at any moment) etc., are considered to have no dwelling.

1.9.10 Independent house: An independent house is one which has a separate structure and entrance with self-contained arrangements. In other words, if the dwelling unit and the entire structure of the house are physically the same, it should be considered as an independent house. In some parts, particularly in rural areas, two or more structures together may constitute a single housing unit. While the main residence may be in one of the structures, the other structures may be used for sleeping, sitting and for store, bath etc. In all such cases, all the structures together will form a single housing unit and will be treated as an independent house.

1.9.11 Flat: A flat, generally, is a part of the building and has one or more rooms with self-contained arrangements and normal housing facilities like water supply, latrine, toilet, etc., which are used exclusively by the household residing therein or jointly with other households. It also includes detached room or rooms with or without other housing facilities.

1.9.12 Room: A constructed area with walls or partitions on all side with at least one door way and a roof overhead. Wall / partition means a continuous solid structure (except for the doors, windows, ventilators, air-holes, etc.) extending from floor to ceiling. A constructed space with grill or net on one or more sides in place of wall or partition is not treated as a room. In case of conical shaped structures in which the roof itself is built to the floor level, the roof is also regarded as wall.

1.9.13 Living room: A room with floor area (carpet area) of at least 4 square metres, a height of at least 2 metres from the floor to the highest point in the ceiling and used for living purposes will be considered as a living room. Thus, rooms used as bedroom, sitting room, prayer room, dining room, servant's room - all are considered as living rooms provided they satisfy the size criterion. Kitchen, bathroom, latrine, store, garage etc. are not living rooms. A room used in common for living purpose and as kitchen or store is also considered as living room.

1.9.14 Other room: It is a room which does not satisfy the specification of 4 square metres floor area and 2 metres height from the floor to the highest point of the ceiling or a room which though satisfies the specification, not used for living purposes. A room satisfying the size criterion when shared by more than one household or when used for both residential and business purposes is to be treated as other room.

1.9.15 Veranda: A roofed space often without a door adjacent to living/other room. It is generally used as an access to the room(s) and is not walled from all sides. In other words, at least one side of such space is either open or walled only to some height or protected by grill, net, etc. A veranda is considered as a 'covered veranda', if it is protected from all sides and an 'uncovered veranda', if is not protected at least from any one of the sides. A covered veranda may have a door also. Corridor or passage within the dwelling unit is treated as portion of a room or a veranda depending on its layout. However, veranda does not cover a common corridor or passage used mainly as an access to the dwelling itself.

1.9.16 Slum: A slum is a compact area within the First Stage Unit (FSU) with a collection of poorly built tenements, mostly of temporary nature, crowded together usually with inadequate sanitary and drinking water facilities in unhygienic conditions in that compact area. Such an area will be considered as a slum if at least 20 households live in that area for the purpose of this survey. Certain areas notified as slums by the respective municipalities, corporations, local bodies or development authorities will be treated as 'notified slums'. Slum will be considered in urban areas only. An area having at least 20 households of notified slum within an FSU will always be considered as a slum. Slum dwellings are commonly known as 'Jhopad Patti' in Bombay and 'Jhuggi Jhopri' in Delhi.

1.9.17 Squatter settlement: Sometimes an area develops into an unauthorised settlement with unauthorised structures put up by "squatters". Squatter settlement will include all slum like settlements which do not have the stipulated number of 20 households to be classified as a slum.

1.9.18 Travel

In general, *travel* is understood as the movement of persons between different geographic boundaries, for any purpose and any duration. Those who travel are referred to as travellers. Travel can occur within a country (domestic travel) or involve more than one country (international travel). Travel has economic, environmental and social impacts that occur mainly in the places visited by the traveller.

1.9.19 Usual Place of Residence

The usual place of residence (UPR) of a person is the place (village/town) where the person has been staying continuously for at least six months immediately prior to the date of survey. Even if a person was not staying in the village/town continuously for six months immediately prior to the date of survey but is presently staying there with intention to stay there continuously for six months then also that place should be taken as his/her UPR.

1.9.20 Usual Environment

1.9.20.1 The *usual environment* (UE) of an individual is a key concept of tourism statistics. It refers to the notional geographical space, extending beyond the UPR of an individual, within which he/she moves in the course of *his/her regular routine of life*.

1.9.20.2 In general, by the term *movement of a person within his/her regular routine of life* is meant the regular and frequent (nearly every day/ every week/every fortnight) movements of a person between his/her UPR and some place for the purpose of work or study, visiting homes of friends or relatives, shopping centers, religious places, centres of health care or any other facilities that might be at a substantial distance away but nevertheless are regularly and frequently visited. Such a movement may be within his/her UPR or beyond it.

1.9.21 Trip

1.9.21.1 With reference to domestic tourism, the term **trip** relates to those household members who are resident Indians. It refers to the movement - *for a duration of not more than six months* - by one or more household members traveling to a place outside their *usual place of residence (UPR) as well as return to their UPR (a round trip)* for purposes other than those of migration or getting employed or setting up of residence in that place and which is outside their regular routine of life. A trip may be made up of visits to different places. A trip may be single-member or multi-member; in other words, a trip may be undertaken by one or more members of the sample household with or without members of other households participating. However, information will be collected in this survey only on those visitors who belong to the sample household.

1.9.21.2 Thus, all movements of persons commuting regularly and frequently (nearly every day/ every week/every fortnight) between their UPR and some fixed places for the purpose of work or study, visiting homes of friends or relatives, shopping centers, religious places, centres of health care or any other facilities that might be at a substantial distance away but nevertheless are regularly and frequently visited, would **not** be considered as trip. Similarly, all movements of persons, whose nature of activities within their regular routine of life involve making movements outside their UPR to different places, like travelling salesmen, mobile hawkers, medical representatives, on-board staff of airlines/railways or of buses, hired taxis, etc would **not** be considered as trips.

1.9.21.3 *Exceptions for exclusion from the coverage of trip as mentioned in the above para:* All domestic movements performed by air except for the purpose of migration or getting employed or setting up of residence in that place shall be considered as trips even if such movements fall within the *regular routine of life* of the visitor. Thus, all such movements would be deemed to be trips. However, domestic movements performed by on-board aircraft crew as part of their duty shall not be considered as trips.

1.9.21.4 A trip is uniquely specified by its set of destinations, persons participating, and starting and ending dates.

1.9.21.4.1 In some cases trips may be reported for which the set of destinations differs slightly from person to person (among those who undertook the trip). For example, it may happen that all members of a household visit Delhi, but only some go from Delhi to Agra to see the Taj Mahal. Even in such cases, if the persons are together for most of the time (duration of the trip), they will be considered to be on the same trip. (Here “being together”

means being in the same town or village, though, obviously, one person may spend the day in a hotel while others visit a museum or temple, or attend a conference.) But if two members of a household spent most of the time away from each other during the period since leaving their residence to return to their residence, then they will be considered to have been on two different trips even though their starting and returning dates may be the same.

Example: A young man and his mother residing in Kolkata go to their relatives' residence in Delhi. Within two days, the young man and a cousin go on a trek to Kedarnath and Badrinath. They return after two weeks. The mother stays in Delhi and returns to Kolkata with her son three days after his return from the trek. Here the mother and son will be considered to have made two separate trips because they have not been together for the major part of the period between leaving their UPR and returning.

1.9.21.4.2 In some cases, one member (or more) among those who go on a trip may start later than the rest, or return earlier, due to other engagements.

(a) If both the starting date and the returning date for this member are different from that of the rest of the members, then this member will be considered to have undertaken a different trip from the rest.

(b) If at least one of the two dates – the starting date (D_s) and the returning date (D_r) – is the same for this member as for the rest of the members, and the other date, too, does not differ from that of the rest of the members by more than 3 days, then such a member may be considered to have gone on the same trip as the rest of the members.

1.9.21.5 The *main destination* of a trip is defined as the place, visiting of which is central to the decision to undertake the trip. However, if no such place can be identified by the informant, the main destination is to be defined as the place where the visitors spent most of their time during the trip. If the visitors spent the same amount of time in two or more places during the trip, then the main destination is defined as the one among these places that is the farthest from the usual place of residence of the visitors.

1.9.21.6 A *trip* may be undertaken for various purposes, viz.

- Business
- Holidaying, leisure and recreation
- Social including visiting friends and relatives, attending marriages, etc.
- Religious and pilgrimage
- Education and training
- Health and medical
- Shopping
- Others (e.g. volunteer work)

1.9.21.7 The *purpose of a trip* of a household member is that purpose but for which he/she would not have undertaken the trip.

1.9.21.8 The *leading purpose of a trip* as a whole is that purpose without which none of the household members in that trip would have undertaken the trip. There may be exceptional situations where no one purpose can be identified as the leading purpose. For example, there could be two or more purposes, say, pilgrimage and health, recorded for different trip members. In such a case, the leading purpose will be identified as that purpose which the informant considers to be the most important for performing the trip.

1.9.21.9 The step-by-step procedure for identifying a movement, which qualifies as a *trip* for a household member is stated below:

Step 1: The movement should be outside the *usual place of residence* of the individual and it should not be in connection with activities, which form part of his regular routine of life.

Step 2: The movement should be a round movement. It means the movement should start from the UPR and end at the UPR.

Step 3: The movement should be completed within the reference period and the duration of the movement should not be more than six months, irrespective of when the movement started.

Step 4: The movement should **not** be for any of the following purposes:

- Arriving at a place to take up an occupation or employment at that place.
For example, farm labourers from Bihar and Eastern U.P. going to Punjab every year.
- Arriving at a place to establish more or less permanent residence in that place.
For example, movements of retirees staying in rental flat in New Delhi moving out to stay in their own flat in Faridabad after retirement.
- Arriving at a place to work temporarily (less than six months) in institutions within the country.
For example, Government servants on deputation to different stations for short periods.
- Arriving at a place on migration within the country.
For example, going to Surat from Howrah as migrant.

Step 5: The movement should **not** be within the regular routine of life of the individual.

Step 6: The movement should **not** be (a) within the same village in rural areas or (b) within the same town in urban areas, where the individual resides.

1.9.22 Visit

1.9.22.1 As stated earlier, (Ref. 1.9.21.1) a trip may consist of **visits** to one or more places. The term **visit** refers to the stay (overnight or same-day) in a place visited during a trip. The stay need not be overnight to qualify as a visit. Nevertheless, the notion of stay supposes that there is a stop for a purpose. Entering a geographical boundary without stopping there for a purpose is considered as being *in transit* and does not qualify as a visit to that area.

1.9.22.2 The number of places visited by a person during the trip is taken as “number of visits”.

1.9.23 Domestic Visitor

1.9.23.1 A *domestic visitor* is a person (household member), residing in the country, who travels to a place within the country, outside his / her **usual place of residence and not as a part of his/her regular routine of life**, for duration of not more than **six** months at a time

and completed the trip during the reference period and whose main purpose of visit is other than

- (a) getting engaged in employment or taking up an occupation in that place
- or (b) setting up of residence in that place
- or (c) migrating to that place.

In other words, a domestic visitor is a household member, who has completed a 'trip' (as defined earlier).

1.9.23.2 The following are **excluded** from the purview of domestic visitors:

(i) persons commuting regularly and frequently (nearly every day, every week or every fortnight) between their usual place of residence and place of work or study, visiting frequently places within their current routine of life in the neighbouring areas (which may be outside their UPR), for instance, visiting homes of friends or relatives, shopping centres, religious places, centres of health care or any other facilities that might be at a distance but nevertheless are regularly and frequently visited.

(ii) persons arriving at a place, with or without a contract, to take up an occupation or to engage in employment in that place

(iii) persons arriving at a place for setting up of residence in that place

(iv) persons who travel to work temporarily (i.e. less than six months) in institutions within the country

(v) foreigners resident in India

(vi) persons arriving at a place on migration or migrants. A migrant is a person whose place of enumeration is different from his/her last usual place of residence (UPR). The last usual place of residence is the place where the person stayed continuously for at least six months immediately prior to moving to the place (village/town) of enumeration.

(vii) persons, whose nature of activities within their regular routine of life involves making movements outside their UPR to different places, like travelling salesmen, mobile hawkers, medical representatives, on-board staff of airlines/ railways or buses, hired taxis etc.

1.9.23.3 The following are **included** within the purview of domestic visitors:

(i) persons who have completed a trip during the reference period and the duration of trip is not more than six months

(ii) persons who are presently household members but were not household members at the time of actually completing a trip within the reference period

(iii) persons on a trip for any of the following purposes:

- Business
- Holidaying, leisure and recreation
- Social including visiting friends and relatives, attending marriages, etc.)
- Religious and pilgrimage
- Education and training
- Health and Medical
- Shopping
- Others (e.g. volunteer work)

(iv) domestic component (not in transit) of the trip of a household member visiting a place outside the country.

1.9.23.4 Domestic visitors are classified into two categories: *domestic overnight visitors* and *domestic same-day visitors*.

1.9.24 Domestic Overnight Visitor

A *domestic overnight visitor* is a domestic visitor who **spends at least one night in the trip**. This means that the trip should cover at least two calendar days, wholly or partly.

1.9.25 Domestic Same-day Visitor

A *domestic same-day visitor* is a domestic visitor who does not spend the night in the trip. This means that the trip should start and end on the same day (0000 hrs to 2359 hrs).

1.9.26 Domestic Tourism

It covers trips of household members within the territory of India, either as a domestic trip or as part of an international trip.

1.9.27 Tourism Expenditure

1.9.27.1 For the purpose of this survey tourism expenditure shall include expenditure made not just during the trip but also the expenditure related to the trip even if made before or after the trip. It shall include all expenses related to the trip paid or payable by the household. It shall also include expenditure related to the trip, whether directly paid or reimbursed, by some institution like Government or other agencies on behalf of the selected household. All expenditure in connection with the trip except those to be used / intended to be used for productive purposes/enterprises shall be included. All expenditure made by a sample household (whose members are on a trip) on members of other households shall be included. But all expenditure made by other households for any trip undertaken by a sample household shall be excluded.

1.9.27.2 Tourism expenditure shall be classified as under:

- a) package component
- b) non-package component, which may be further sub-divided as below:
 - i. accommodation
 - ii. food and drink
 - iii. transport
 - iv. recreation, religious, cultural, sporting and health related activities
 - v. shopping
 - vi. others

1.9.27.3 Tourism expenditure shall include

- monetary expenditure on goods and services paid or payable by the visitor out of his/her own pocket

- direct expenditure by the visitor reimbursed by some institution like Government or other agencies or expenses of the visitor directly paid by such institutions
- expenditure incurred on items of high unit values like cars, computers, etc. related to a trip if those are used for consumption purpose and not for productive purpose.

1.9.27.4 Tourism expenditure shall exclude

- the payment of taxes and duties not levied on products (goods and services)
- the purchase of financial and non-financial assets, including land, real estate
- all transfers of cash or used goods such as donations to charities or to members of other households as these do not correspond to the purchase of consumption goods or services from these charities or individuals. Alms are also excluded.

1.9.28 Package Trip

A package is a combination of transport and any one or more chargeable travel services (e.g., accommodation, meals/food, entertainment and/or sightseeing, etc.) and sold by tour operators through travel agencies or directly to final consumers as a single product for a single price. The components of a package tour might be pre-established or tailor-made, in which case, the visitor chooses a combination of services he/she wishes to acquire from a pre-established list of such services. ***If such a package is availed of for a major part of time in a trip, such a trip should be considered as a package trip.*** Note that traveling by say, a hired video coach, for sightseeing where expenditure on food and entry tickets to sightseeing spots is borne separately by the visitors should **not** be taken a package.

1.9.29 Non-Resident Indian (NRI)

Indian citizens (including officials of Indian diplomatic missions abroad) who stay abroad for employment or for carrying on business or vocation or any other purpose in circumstances indicating a period of stay abroad exceeding 6 months shall be considered as Non-Resident Indian (NRI) for the purpose of this survey.

1.9.30 Economic activity: The entire spectrum of human activity falls into two categories: economic activity and non-economic activity. Any activity that results in production of goods and services that adds value to national product is considered as an economic activity. The economic activities have two parts - market activities and non-market activities. Market activities are those that involve remuneration to those who perform it, i.e., activity performed for pay or profit. Such activities include production of all goods and services for market including those of government services, etc. Non-market activities are those involving the production of primary commodities for own consumption and own account production of fixed assets.

The full spectrum of economic activities as defined in the UN System of National Accounts is not covered in the definition adopted for the Employment and Unemployment surveys of NSSO. Production of any good for own consumption is considered as economic activity by UN System of National Accounts but production of only primary goods is considered as economic activity by NSSO. While the former includes activities like own account processing of primary products among other things, in the NSS surveys, processing of primary products for own consumption is not considered as economic activity. However, it

may be noted that 'production of agricultural goods for own consumption' covers all activities up to and including stages of thrashing and storing of produce, for own consumption, comes under the coverage of the economic activities of NSSO.

The term 'economic activity' in this round will include:

(i) all the market activities described above, i.e., the activities performed for pay or profit which result in production of goods and services for exchange,

(ii) of the non-market activities,

(a) all the activities relating to the primary sector (i.e., **Industry Divisions 01 to 14 of NIC-2004**) which result in production (including free collection of uncultivated crops, forestry, firewood, hunting, fishing, mining, quarrying, etc.) of primary goods, including thrashing and storing of grains for own consumption.

and

(b) the activities relating to the own-account production of fixed assets. Own account production of fixed assets include construction of own houses, roads, wells, etc., and of machinery, tools, etc., for household enterprise and also construction of any private or community facilities free of charge. A person may be engaged in own account construction in the capacity of either a labourer or a supervisor.

By convention, as in earlier rounds, the activities like prostitution, begging, etc., which may result in earnings, will not be considered as economic activities. In earlier rounds, activities under 'smuggling' were kept outside the economic activity. In assigning the activity status of an individual in the field, probing is perhaps not extended to ascertain whether the production of goods and services is carried out in the form of smuggling. Thus, in practice, production of goods and services in the form of smuggling have actually been considered as economic activity in NSS surveys. In view of this, activity status of a person may be judged irrespective of the situation whether such activity is carried out illegally in the form of smuggling or not.

1.9.31 Activity status: It is the activity situation in which a person is found during a reference period, which concerns the person's participation in economic and non-economic activities. According to this, a person will be in one or a combination of the following three status during a reference period:

(i) Working or being engaged in economic activity (work),

(ii) Being not engaged in economic activity (work) and either making tangible efforts to seek 'work' or being available for 'work' if the 'work' is available and

(iii) Being not engaged in any economic activity (work) and also not available for 'work'.

Activity statuses, as mentioned in (i) & (ii) above, are associated with 'being in labour force' and the last with 'not being in the labour force'. Within the labour force, activity status (i) above is associated with 'employment' and that of (ii) above with 'unemployment'. The three broad activity statuses have been further sub-divided into several detailed activity categories. These are stated below:

(i) *working or being engaged in economic activity (employed):*

- (a) worked in household enterprise (self-employed) as an own-account worker
- (b) worked in household enterprise (self-employed) as an employer
- (c) worked in household enterprise (self-employed) as 'helper'
- (d) worked as regular wage/ salaried employee
- (e) worked as casual wage labour in public works other than National Rural Employment Guarantee (NREG) public works
- (f) worked as casual wage labour in National Rural Employment Guarantee (NREG) public works
- (g) worked as casual wage labour in other types of works
- (h) did not work due to sickness though there was work in household enterprise
- (i) did not work due to other reasons though there was work in household enterprise
- (j) did not work due to sickness but had regular wage/ salaried employment
- (k) did not work due to other reasons but had regular wage/ salaried employment

(ii) *not working but seeking or available for work (unemployed) :*

- (a) sought work
- (b) did not seek but was available for work

(iii) *not working and also not available for work (not in labour force) :*

- (a) attended educational institution
- (b) attended domestic duties only
- (c) attended domestic duties and was also engaged in free collection of goods, tailoring, weaving, etc., for household use
- (d) recipients of rent, pension, remittance, etc.
- (e) not able to work due to disability
- (f) others
- (g) did not work due to sickness (for casual workers only).

1.9.32 The various constituents of 'employed', 'unemployed', 'labour force', 'out of labour force' are as explained below:

(a) **Workers (or employed):** Persons who, during the reference period, are engaged in any economic activity or who, despite their attachment to economic activity, have temporarily abstained from work for reasons of illness, injury or other physical disability, bad weather, festivals, social or religious functions or other contingencies constitute workers. Unpaid helpers who assist in the operation of an economic activity in the household farm or non-farm activities are also considered as workers. All the workers are assigned one of the detailed activity status under the broad activity category 'working or being engaged in economic activity'.

(b) **Seeking or available for work (or unemployed):** Persons, who, during the reference period, owing to lack of work, had not worked but either sought work through employment exchanges, intermediaries, friends or relatives or by making applications to prospective employers or expressed their willingness or availability for work *under the prevailing*

condition of work and remuneration are considered as those who are 'seeking or available for work' (or unemployed).

(c) **Labour force:** Persons who are either 'working' (or employed) or 'seeking or available for work' (or unemployed) during the reference period together constitute the labour force.

(d) **Out of labour force:** Persons who are neither 'working' and at the same time nor 'seeking or available for work' for various reasons during the reference period are considered to be 'out of labour force'. The persons under this category are students, those engaged in domestic duties, rentiers, pensioners, recipients of remittances, those living on alms, infirm or disabled persons, too young or too old persons, prostitutes, etc. and casual labourers not working due to sickness.

1.9.33 It may be noted that workers have been further categorized as *self-employed, regular wage/ salaried employee and casual wage labourer*. These categories are defined in the following paragraphs.

1.9.34 **Self-employed:** Persons who operate their own farm or non-farm enterprises or are engaged independently in a profession or trade on own-account or with one or a few partners are deemed to be self-employed in household enterprises. The essential feature of the self-employed is that they have *autonomy* (i.e., how, where and when to produce) and *economic independence* (i.e., market, scale of operation and money) for carrying out their operation. The remuneration of the self-employed consists of a non-separable combination of two parts: a reward for their labour and profit of their enterprise. The combined remuneration is given by the revenue from sale of output produced by self-employed persons *minus* the cost of purchased inputs in production.

The self-employed persons may again be categorised into the following three groups:

- (i) **own-account workers:** They are the self-employed who operate their enterprises on their own account or with one or a few partners and who during the reference period by and large, run their enterprise without hiring any labour. They may, however, have unpaid helpers to assist them in the activity of the enterprise.
- (ii) **employers:** The self-employed persons who work on their own account or with one or a few partners and by and large run their enterprise by hiring labour are the employers, and
- (iii) **helpers in household enterprise:** The helpers are a category of self-employed persons mostly family members who keep themselves engaged in their household enterprises, working full or part time and do not receive any regular salary or wages in return for the work performed. They do not run the household enterprise on their own but assist the related person living in the same household in running the household enterprise.

1.9.35 There is a category of workers who work at a place of their choice which is outside the establishment that employs them or buys their product. Different expressions like 'home workers', 'home based workers' and 'out workers' are synonymously used for such workers. For the purpose of this survey, all such workers will be categorised as 'self-employed'. The 'home workers' have *some degree of autonomy* and *economic independence* in carrying out

the work, and their work is not directly supervised as is the case for the *employees*. Like the other self-employed, these workers have to meet certain costs, like actual or imputed rent on the buildings in which they work, costs incurred for heating, lighting and power, storage or transportation, etc., thereby indicating that they have some tangible or intangible means of production. It may be noted that *employees* are not required to provide such inputs for production.

1.9.36 It may further be elaborated that the 'putting out' system prevalent in the production process in which a part of production which is 'put out' is performed in different household enterprises (and not at the employers establishment). For example, *bidi* rollers obtaining orders from a *bidi* manufacturer will be considered as home workers irrespective of whether or not they were supplied raw material (leaves, *masala*, etc.), equipment (scissors) and other means of production. The fee or remuneration received consists of two parts - the share of their labour and profit of the enterprise. In some cases, the payment may be based on piece rate. Similarly, a woman engaged in tailoring or embroidery work on order from a wholesaler, or making *pappad* on order from some particular unit/ contractor/ trader at her home will be treated as 'home worker'. On the other hand, if she does the work in the employers premises, she will be treated as *employee*. Again, if she is not undertaking these activities on orders from outside, but markets the products by herself/ other household members for profit, she will be considered as an own account worker, if of course, she does not employ any hired help more or less on a regular basis.

1.9.37 **Regular wage/ salaried employee:** Persons working in other's farm or non-farm enterprises (both household and non-household) and getting in return salary or wages on a regular basis (and not on the basis of daily or periodic renewal of work contract) are the regular wage/ salaried employees. *This category not only includes persons getting time wage but also persons receiving piece wage or salary and paid apprentices, both full time and part-time.*

1.9.38 **Casual wage labour:** A person casually engaged in other's farm or non-farm enterprises (both household and non-household) and getting in return wage according to the terms of the daily or periodic work contract is a casual wage labour. Usually, in the rural areas, one category of casual labourers can be seen who normally engage themselves in '*public works*' activities. The concepts related to '*public works*' are discussed later in this chapter.

1.9.39 **Usual principal activity status:** The usual activity status relates to the activity status of a person during the reference period of 365 days preceding the date of survey. The activity status on which a person spent relatively longer time (major time criterion) during the 365 days preceding the date of survey is considered the *usual principal activity status* of the person. To decide the usual principal activity of a person, he/ she is first categorised as belonging to the labour force or not, during the reference period **on the basis of major time criterion**. Persons, thus, adjudged as not belonging to the labour force are assigned the broad activity status 'neither working nor available for work'. For the persons belonging to the labour force, the broad activity status of either 'working' or 'not working but seeking and/ or available for work' is then ascertained again on the basis of the relatively longer time spent in the labour force during the 365 days preceding the date of survey. Within the broad activity status so determined, the detailed activity status category of a person pursuing more than one such activity will be determined again on the basis of the relatively longer time spent.

1.9.40 Manual work: A job essentially involving physical labour is considered as manual work. However, jobs essentially involving physical labour but also requiring a certain level of general, professional, scientific or technical education are not to be termed as 'manual work'. On the other hand, jobs not involving much of physical labour and at the same time not requiring much educational (general, scientific, technical or otherwise) background are to be treated as 'manual work'. Thus, engineers, doctors, dentists, midwives, etc., are not considered manual workers even though their jobs involve some amount of physical labour. But, peons, chowkidars, watchman, etc., are considered as manual workers even though their work might not involve much physical labour. A few examples of manual workers are cooks, waiters, building caretakers, sweepers, cleaners and related workers, launderers, dry cleaners and pressers, hair dressers, barbers, beauticians, watchmen, gate keepers, agricultural labourers, plantation labourers and related workers.

1.9.41 Rural Labour: Manual labour working in agricultural and /or non-agricultural occupations *in return for wages* paid either in cash or in kind (excluding exchange labour) and *living in rural areas*, will be taken as rural labour.

1.9.42 Agricultural labour: A person will be considered to be engaged as agricultural labour, if he/she follows one or more of the following agricultural occupations in the capacity of a wage paid manual labour, whether paid in cash or kind or both:

- (i) farming,
- (ii) dairy farming,
- (iii) production of any horticultural commodity,
- (iv) raising of livestock, bees or poultry,
- (v) any practice performed on a farm as incidental to or in conjunction with farm operations (including forestry and timbering) and the preparation for market and delivery to storage or to market or to carriage for transportation to market of farm produce.

Working in fisheries is excluded from agricultural labour. Further, 'carriage for transportation' refers only to the first stage of the transport from farm to the first place of disposal.

1.9.43 Wage paid-manual labour: A person who does manual work in return for wages in cash or kind or partly in cash and partly in kind (excluding exchange labour) is a wage paid manual labour. Salaries are also to be counted as wages. A person who is self-employed in manual work is not treated as a wage paid manual labour.

1.9.44 Procedure for determining Household principal industry and occupation: To determine the household principal industry and occupation, the general procedure to be followed is to list all the occupations pertaining to economic activities pursued by the members of the household excluding those employed by the household and paying guests (who in view of their staying and taking food in the household are considered as its normal members) during the one year period preceding the date of survey, no matter whether such occupations are pursued by the members in their principal or subsidiary (on the basis of earnings) capacity. Out of the occupations listed that one which fetched the maximum earnings to the household during the last 365 days preceding the date of survey would be considered as the principal household occupation. It is quite possible that one or more members of the household may pursue the household occupation in different industries. In

such cases, the particular industry out of all the different industries corresponding to the principal occupation, which fetched the maximum earnings, should be considered as the principal industry of the household. In extreme cases, the earnings may be equal in two different occupations or industry-occupation combinations. By convention, in such cases, priority will be given to the occupation or industry-occupation combination of the senior-most member.

1.9.45 Land possessed: The area of land possessed will include land 'owned', 'leased in' and 'land neither owned nor leased in' (i.e., encroached) by the household but exclude land 'leased out'. The total land area possessed by the household as on the date of survey is taken into account. A piece of land is considered to be owned by the household if permanent heritable possession with or without the right to transfer the title vests in a member or members of the household. Land held in owner-like possession say, under perpetual lease, hereditary tenure, long-term lease for 30 years or more, etc., will also be considered as land owned. For a piece of land under the possession of the household, if the household lacks title of ownership and also does not have lease agreement for the use of land transacted, either verbally or in writing, such land will be considered as 'neither owned nor leased in'. In collecting information regarding land possessed, the actual position as obtained on the date of survey will be considered. It may be noted that the 'area of land possessed' to be recorded should not include the area of land owned, leased-in, etc., by the servants/paying guests who are considered as normal members of the household.

1.9.46 Public works: 'Public works' are those activities which are sponsored by Government or Local Bodies, and which cover local area development works like construction of roads, dams, bunds, digging of ponds, etc., as relief measures, or as an outcome of employment generation schemes under the poverty alleviation programme such as National Rural Employment Guarantee Programme (NREGP), Sampoorna Grameen Rozgar Yojana (SGRY), National Food for Work Programme (NFFWP), etc.

The coverage of schemes under 'public works' is restricted to those schemes under poverty alleviation programme, or relief measures through which the Government generates wage employment. It may be noted that the names of these schemes signify the Budget Heads under Plan from which funds are released for carrying out various 'types of works'. The types of works that are generally undertaken through these schemes, are watershed development, drought proofing, land levelling, flood control, laying pipes or cables, sanitation, water harvesting, irrigation canal, development of orchard, road construction, building construction / repair, running crèche, etc.

There may be some schemes sponsored by the Government and in operation, which are conceived as self-employment generation schemes. Some such schemes of the Government are Swarnjayanti Gram Swarozgar Yojana (schemes under erstwhile IRDP merged with this), Rural Employment Generation Programme (REGP), Prime Minister's Rozgar Yojana (PMRY), Valmiki Ambedkar Awas Yojana (VAMBAY), etc. Employment generated through these schemes is not to be considered within the purview of 'public works'.

Sometimes, the Government may undertake various programmes, viz., Accelerated Rural Water Supply Programme (ARWSP), Rural Sanitation Programme (RSP), Drought Prone Areas Programme (DPAP), Desert Development Programme (DDP), Integrated Wastelands Development Programme (IWDP), Pradhan Mantri Gram Sadak Yojana (PMGSY), etc. The main objective of such programmes is on infrastructure development rather than poverty

alleviation and generation of employment. Moreover, these programmes are executed as projects through contractors. Employment generated through these programmes, which are executed through contractors, is also kept outside the domain of 'public works'. However, if similar activities relating to rural water supply, rural sanitation, desert development, wastelands development, etc. are undertaken by the State Government or Local Bodies to provide wage employment and without employing any contractor for its execution, those are to be considered under 'public works'.

Classification of individuals as 'casual labour in *public works*' requires that the work in which they participate is '*public works*' as defined above. To distinguish between '*public works*' and works not classifiable as '*public works*', some broad characteristics of '*public work*' have been identified, viz. the primary objective is generation of wage employment and poverty alleviation, and creation of community asset as an outcome in achieving those main objectives. These features of *public works* along with the description of some wage employment generation schemes given above will be helpful in identification of '*public works*'.

A short description of the three schemes sponsored by the Central Government, which are in operation either in rural areas or in urban areas, and are covered under '*public works*' is given below:

1.9.46.1 National Rural Employment Guarantee Programme (NREGP): The National Rural Employment Guarantee Act, 2005 (NREGA) is an important step towards the realization of the right to work and to enhance the livelihood security of the households in the rural areas of the country. It extends to the whole of India except the state of Jammu & Kashmir. According to this Act, Rural Employment Guarantee Schemes (REGS) are formed by the State Governments. The Scheme provides at least one hundred days of guaranteed wage employment in every financial year to every household whose adult members volunteer to do unskilled manual work. Adult means a person who has completed his/ her eighteen years of age. Unskilled manual work means any physical work which any adult person is capable of doing without any special skill/ training. The implementing agency of the scheme may be any Department of the Central Government or a State Government, a Zila Parishad, Panchayat/ Gram Panchayat or any local authority or Government undertaking or non-governmental organization authorized by the Central Government or the State Government. If an applicant for employment under the scheme is not provided employment within 15 days of receipt of his application seeking employment or from the date on which employment has been sought, the applicant will be entitled for getting daily unemployment allowances.

1.9.46.2 Sampoorna Grameen Rozgar Yojana (SGRY): The primary objective of the Sampoorna Grameen Rozgar Yojana (SGRY) is to provide additional wage employment in all rural areas and thereby ensure food security and improve nutritional levels. The secondary objective is the creation of durable assets and infrastructural development in rural areas. This scheme was announced by the Prime Minister on 15.8.2001 and launched in September 2001. The schemes of Jawahar Gram Samridhi Yojana (JGSY), Employment Assurance Scheme (EAS) have been merged under this programme w.e.f. 1.4.2002. The SGRY is open to all rural poor who are in need of wage employment and desire to do manual and unskilled work in and around the village/ habitat. The programme is self-targeting in nature. While providing wage employment preference is given to agricultural wage earners, non-agricultural unskilled wage earners, marginal farmers, women, members

of Scheduled Castes/ Scheduled Tribes, parents of child labour withdrawn from hazardous occupations, parents of handicapped children or adults with handicapped parents. The programme is implemented through the Panchayati Raj Institutions (PRIs). Thirty percent of employment opportunities are reserved for women under the programme.

The programme is implemented on cost sharing basis in the ratio of 75:25 between the Centre and the States for the cash component of the programme. However, foodgrains under the programme are provided to the States free of cost.

Five per cent of the funds and foodgrains under SGRY are retained in the Ministry of Rural Development for utilization in areas of acute distress arising out of natural calamities or by taking up preventive measures in the chronically drought or flood affected areas. In addition, a certain percentage of the allotted foodgrains under the SGRY is reserved for the Special Component to be used in any Central or State Government scheme with wage employment potential to meet exigencies arising out of any natural calamity. The remaining funds and foodgrains under SGRY are distributed among the Zila Parishad, Intermediate Panchayats and Village Panchayat in the ratio of 20:30:50.

Wages under the programme are paid partly in the form of foodgrains and partly in cash. The States and UTs are free to calculate the cost of foodgrains paid as part of wages, at a uniform rate, which may be either BPL rate or APL rate, or anywhere between the two rates. The workers are paid the balance of wages in cash so that they are assured of the notified minimum wages.

Under the programme, priority is given to works of soil and moisture conservation, minor irrigation, rejuvenation of drinking water resources and augmentation of ground water, traditional water harvesting structures, desiltation of village tanks/ ponds, durable assets such as schools, kitchen sheds for schools, dispensaries, community centers, and Panchayat Ghars. Development of Haats, which are labour intensive, is also to be given priority. The size, cost and nature of the work should be such that they may be completed within a period of one year and in exceptional situations within a maximum period of two years.

1.9.46.3 National Food for Work Programme (NFFWP): The National Food for Work Programme (NFFWP) is being implemented in 150 most backward districts of the country from November, 2004. The objective of the programme is to provide additional resources to 150 most backward districts of the country so that generation of supplementary wage employment and provision of food security through creation of need based economic, social and community assets in these districts is further intensified. Foodgrains are provided to the States free of cost. Works are taken up under the programme in accordance with the Five Year Perspective Plan. The Collector is responsible for preparation of the Perspective Plan and for programme implementation.

The above three schemes are sponsored by the Central Government for generation of wage employment. These apart, there may be similar schemes sponsored by the State Government or Local Bodies to provide wage employment, which are also to be considered under '*public works*'.

Table 1: Allocation of sample villages and blocks for NSS 65th round

state/u.t.	number of FSUs					
	central sample			state sample		
	total	rural	urban	total	rural	urban
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)
ANDHRA PRADESH	760	488	272	760	488	272
ARUNACHAL PRADESH	144	104	40	144	104	40
ASSAM	464	376	88	464	376	88
BIHAR	560	472	88	560	472	88
CHHATTISGARH	216	152	64	216	152	64
GOA	40	16	24	40	16	24
GUJARAT	528	280	248	336	176	160
HARYANA	240	144	96	240	144	96
HIMACHAL PRADESH	192	160	32	192	160	32
JAMMU & KASHMIR	240	160	80	480	320	160
JHARKHAND	272	184	88	272	184	88
KARNATAKA	544	304	240	544	304	240
KERALA	520	336	184	780	504	276
MADHYA PRADESH	704	456	248	704	456	248
MAHARASHTRA	1040	520	520	1296	520	776
MANIPUR	288	192	96	576	384	192
MEGHALAYA	176	128	48	176	128	48
MIZORAM	160	64	96	160	64	96
NAGALAND	112	80	32	176	80	96
ORISSA	488	384	104	488	384	104
PUNJAB	288	160	128	288	160	128
RAJASTHAN	560	384	176	560	384	176
SIKKIM	112	88	24	112	88	24
TAMIL NADU	792	400	392	792	400	392
TRIPURA	288	216	72	288	216	72
UTTAR PRADESH	1568	1120	448	1568	1120	448
UTTARAKHAND	112	72	40	112	72	40
WEST BENGAL	1008	632	376	1008	632	376
A & N ISLANDS	40	24	16	0	0	0
CHANDIGARH	48	8	40	0	0	0
D & N HAVELI	32	16	16	0	0	0
DAMAN & DIU	32	16	16	32	16	16
DELHI	288	16	272	576	32	544
LAKSHADWEEP	16	4	12	0	0	0
PONDICHERY	56	16	40	56	16	40
ALL- INDIA	12928	8172	4756	13996	8552	5444

Chapter Two

Schedule 0.0: List of Households

2.0.0 Introduction: Schedule 0.0 is meant for listing all the houses and households residing in the sample first stage unit (FSU) or sample hamlet-groups/ sub-blocks in case of large FSUs. Some household information like household size, trips performed (overnight/same day), structure type (for rural), household monthly per capita expenditure (MPCE) for urban, etc. will also be collected in this schedule. These auxiliary information will be used for grouping the households into different second-stage-strata (SSS). The sampling frames for selection of households will be prepared and details of the selection of sample households will be recorded in this schedule. Whenever hamlet-groups/ sub-blocks (hg's/sb's) are required to be formed, particulars relating to the formation and selection of hg's/ sb's are also to be recorded in this schedule. Concepts and definitions of various terms are given in Chapter One.

2.0.1 Structure of the schedule: The schedule 0.0 contains the following blocks:

- Block 0: descriptive identification of sample FSU
- Block 1: identification of sample FSU
- Block 2: particulars of field operations
- Block 3: sketch map of hamlet-group (hg)/ sub-block (sb) formation
- Block 4.1: list of hamlets (only for rural samples with hg formation)
- Block 4.2: list and selection of hamlet-groups (hg's)/ sub-blocks (sb's)
- Block 5: list of households and record of selection for households (hg/ sb 1/ 2)
- Block 6: particulars of sampling of households
- Block 7: distance of the village to the nearest facility and availability of some amenities in the village (for inhabited villages only)
- Block 8: particulars relating to public works programme in the village (for inhabited villages only)
- Block 9: remarks by investigator/ senior investigator
- Block 10: comments by superintendent/ senior superintendent
- Block 11: comments by other supervisory officer(s)

2.0.2 Unit of survey and sampling frame: The first stage unit (FSU) is the 2001 census village in the rural sector. FSU in the urban sector is the Urban Frame Survey (UFS) block or non-UFS town itself if UFS frame for the town is not available. *Latest list of UFS blocks, to the extent possible, will be used for selection of urban samples. Towns may, therefore, belong to different phases of UFS. It is indicated in the sample list under the head "frame code" as to which particular UFS phase has been used as the sampling frame for selection of FSUs belonging to a town.* The investigator, on arrival at a sample FSU will ascertain the exact boundaries of it. This may be done with the help of the village officials like patwari, panchayat authorities etc. for rural areas and with the help of UFS maps/ ward maps/ town maps in the urban areas.

2.0.3 Formation of hamlet-groups (hg's) and selection of hamlet-groups 1 & 2: With a view to controlling the workload mainly at the stage of listing of households, hamlet-group formation will be resorted to in the large villages. A large village will be divided into a certain number (D) of sub-divisions called hamlet-groups (hg's). The number of hg's to be formed (i.e. the value of D) will depend on the *approximate present population* of the sample village. The criterion for deciding the number of hg's to be formed in a large village has been discussed in detail in Chapter One.

For large sample village, two hg's will be selected. Out of all hg's formed in the village, the one with the highest percentage population will be selected with probability 1. In case there is more than one hg with same highest percentage of population, the one among them which is listed first in block 4.2 will be selected with probability 1. This hg selected with certainty will be designated as hg 1. Another hg will be selected randomly (Simple Random Sampling) from the rest of hg's of the village and designated as hg 2. *Listing and selection of households will be done separately and independently for each selected hamlet-group.* For the sample village without hg formation, entire village will be treated as *hamlet-group 1*.

The procedure for listing hamlets and forming hamlet-groups is outlined below.

2.0.3.1 Procedure: In a large village, there exist usually a few localities or pockets where the houses of the village tend to cluster together. These are called 'hamlets'. In case there are no such recognised hamlets in the village, the census sub-divisions of the village (e.g. enumeration blocks or groups of census house numbers or geographically distinct blocks of houses) may be treated as 'hamlets'. Large hamlets may be divided artificially to achieve more or less equal population content for the purpose of hamlet-group formation. The procedure for formation of hamlet-groups is best described, perhaps, by listing sequentially the steps involved:

- (i) Identify the hamlets as described above.
- (ii) Ascertain approximate present population of each hamlet.
- (iii) Draw a notional map in block 3 showing the approximate location of the hamlets and number them in a serpentine order starting from the northwest corner and proceeding southwards. While drawing this map, uninhabited area (non-abadi area) of the village will be included as part of nearby hamlet, so that no area of the village is left out. The boundaries of the hamlets may be defined with the help of some landmarks like canals, footpaths, railway lines, roads, cadastral survey plot numbers etc., so that it would be possible to identify and locate the geographical boundaries of the hamlet-groups to be formed in the village.
- (iv) List the hamlets in block 4.1 in the order of their numbering. Indicate the present population content in terms of percentages.
- (v) Group the hamlets into D hamlet-groups. *The criteria* to be adopted for hamlet-group formation are *equality of population content and geographical contiguity* (numbering of hamlets is not to be adopted as a guideline for grouping). *In case there is a conflict between the two aspects, geographical contiguity is to be given priority.* However, there should not be substantial difference between the population of the smallest and the largest hamlet-group formed. Indicate the grouping in the map.

- (vi) Number the hamlet-groups serially in column (1) of block 4.2. The hamlet-group containing hamlet number 1 will be numbered as 1, the hamlet-group with next higher hamlet number not included in hg 1 will be numbered as 2 and so on. Indicate the numbers also in the notional map. It is quite possible that a hamlet-group may not be constituted of hamlets with consecutive serial numbers.

2.0.4 Formation of sub-blocks (sb's): In case urban sample FSUs are found to be large in terms of population, they are subjected to sub-block formation. Procedure for formation of sub-blocks is the same as that for the formation of hamlet-groups in the case of large villages. Here the sub-blocks are to be formed artificially by dividing the FSU into a certain number (say, D) of divisions *by more or less equalizing the population giving priority to geographical compactness* within each sub-block as per the criterion specified in Chapter One. The number of sb's to be formed (i.e. the value of D) will be determined according to the same criteria as adopted in the case of rural FSUs. Sub-blocks will be numbered serially in column (1) of block 4.2.

As in the case of villages, for large sample FSUs, two sub-blocks will be selected. The procedure of selection will be same as that given for villages with hg formation – one with probability 1 and the other with SRS. *Listing and selection of households will be done separately and independently for each selected sub-block.* For the urban sample FSUs without sub-block formation entire FSU will be treated as *sub-block 1*.

2.0.5 Starting point for listing: Having determined the area unit to be surveyed, the investigator will proceed to list the houses and households in this area unit. The listing may be done in the same order as that of the 2001 Census order of house listing. If the census order of house listing is not available, the listing may be started from the northwest corner of the FSU and proceeding southwards in serpentine order. While listing the households, some essential minimum particulars about the households will be collected for the purpose of second stage stratification.

2.0.6 Use of additional sheets of blocks 4.1, 4.2, 5: Whenever one schedule booklet is not adequate to list all the hamlets and hamlet-groups/ sub-blocks (blocks 4.1, 4.2) or all the households (block 5) of the sample FSU or hg/sb, additional sheets containing the relevant block(s) shall be used and tagged firmly to the main schedule.

The procedures to be followed for filling up the various blocks of the schedule 0.0 are described in the following paragraphs.

Before filling in blocks, it is necessary to put tick-marks in the appropriate boxes at left hand and right hand top corners of the first page of the schedule.

Block 0: Descriptive identification of sample FSU

2.0.7 General: This block is meant for recording descriptive identification particulars of the sample FSU. State/ UT, district, tehsil/ town name (to be tick-marked appropriately), village name, ward no./ investigator (IV) unit no., block no. are to be copied properly from the sample list in the appropriate places.

Block 1: Identification of sample FSU

2.1.0 General: This block is meant for recording the identification particulars of the sample FSU in terms of codes or numbers. The particulars relating to all the items will be recorded in box spaces provided in the block against each item (except for items 2 & 3, the codes of which are already printed). For multiple cells, the rightmost cell shall be used for recording the digit of the unit place, the next left cell for the tenth place digit and so on. *Items 1, 4 to 11, 13 and 14 shall be copied from the sample list.*

2.1.1 Item 12: FOD sub-region: The four-digit code corresponding to the FOD sub-region to which the sample FSU belongs will be recorded against item 12. A ‘-’ will be put against this item for the state samples and also for the central samples in respect of the states of Arunachal Pradesh, Manipur, Mizoram, Tripura, Leh (Ladakh) and Kargil districts of Jammu & Kashmir for which field work is carried out by the respective States.

2.1.2 Item 13: frame code: The different types of frames used for selection of FSUs are indicated by 'frame code' in the sample list. *Entry against item 13 shall be copied from the sample list.* The frame codes to be used are:

Rural: 2001 census – 13.

Urban: 1982-87 UFS – 06, 1987-92 UFS – 07, 1992-97 UFS – 09, 1997-2002 UFS – 11,
2002-2007 UFS – 14, 2001 census – 13 (for non-UFS towns).

2.1.3 Item 14: frame population: The population of the sample FSU as given in the sample list will be copied here. For villages and non-UFS towns, it will be the census 2001 population and for UFS blocks, it will be the UFS block population of the block as per UFS frame.

2.1.4 Item 15: approximate present population: The investigator will first ascertain the approximate present population of the entire sample FSU taking into consideration the normal growth of population along with any abnormal influx of population into or exodus of population from the sample FSU. This may be ascertained mainly from the knowledgeable persons by putting certain probing questions. The starting point can be 2001 census population. In the case of large difference with census population, it may be asked whether there has been any abnormal influx into or exodus from the FSU after the census or the village has been split or partly merged with other village/ urban area. If so, the approximate increase or decrease of population due to such events or any new settlements that have come up in the FSU after the census is to be ascertained. **In case it is difficult to explain the large difference between frame population and approximate present population in terms of likely growth/decline of population during the intervening period, adequate remarks for such differences should be given in block 9/ 10/ 11.**

2.1.5 Item 16: total number of hg's/ sb's formed (D): The total number of hg's/ sb's formed in the sample FSU will be the value of 'D' as recorded in block 4.2. If the sample FSU does not require any hg/ sb formation, the entry against this item will be '1'.

2.1.6 Item 17: Survey code: The different survey codes are:

selected FSU has been surveyed:
inhabited 1

uninhabited	2
zero case	3
selected FSU is casualty but a substitute FSU has been surveyed:	
inhabited	4
uninhabited	5
zero case	6
selected FSU is casualty and no substitute has been surveyed	7.

Some examples of zero cases are: FSUs comprising wholly the barracks of military and paramilitary forces (like CRPF, BSF etc.), rural areas declared as urban areas and now forming part of UFS frame used for urban sampling, FSUs wholly submerged under water in a dam or FSUs with the whole population evicted because of acquisition of land to construct a new factory or other project work etc. with no chance of habitation in future. As against this, the FSU whose entire population has shifted elsewhere due to some natural calamities like fire, cyclone etc., but is likely to return in the future, will be considered as uninhabited FSU and will be given code 2 or 5 as the case might be. If the substitute FSU cannot be surveyed, survey code will be 7.

2.1.7 Item 18: Reason code for substitution of original sample (for codes 4 – 7 in item 17): In all the cases where the *originally* selected sample FSU is a casualty irrespective of whether it has been substituted and subsequently surveyed or not surveyed (i.e. for codes 4 to 7 against item 17), the reason for its becoming a casualty will be recorded in terms of code against item 18. The codes are:

Original sample FSU:	
not identifiable/ traceable.....	1
not accessible.....	2
restricted area, survey of which is not permitted	3
others (specify).....	9

A ‘-’ may be put against this item if the entry against item 17 is 1 or 2 or 3. *Cases of FSUs comprising wholly the barracks of military and paramilitary forces will not be considered as restricted area for providing code 3 against item 18. As stated earlier, such cases will be considered as surveyed and will be treated as zero cases.*

2.1.8 Item 19: number of slums in the FSU (urban): Number of slums identified within the FSU will be recorded against this item. For definition of ‘slum’, Chapter One may be referred to. This item may be filled in after completion of listing of households. If there is no slum in the FSU, 0 may be entered here.

2.2 Block 2: Particulars of field operations: The details of field operations will be recorded in this block. While recording the total time taken to canvass the schedule 0.0 (i.e. column 3, srl. no. 4 of this block), it may be noted that the time taken to reach the sample village and come back should not be considered for filling in this item. In other words, total time spent in identification of the boundaries of the sample FSU, hamlet-group/ sub-block formation, listing of

households, formation of second-stage strata, selection of households and filling in all other blocks of this schedule may be recorded in hours. All other items are self-explanatory.

2.3 Block 3: Sketch map of hamlet-group (hg)/ sub-block (sb) formation

2.3.0 For large FSUs requiring hg/ sb formation, the space provided for in the block shall be used to draw a free hand sketch-map of the FSU showing the boundaries of the hamlets and hg's/ sb's formed so that they may be identifiable in the field afterwards with the help of this map. It need not be drawn to scale. The serial numbers of the hamlets as given in column (1) of block 4.1 will be written down on the map against each hamlet. The hamlet-group number given in column (1) of block 4.2 to which the hamlet belongs will also be shown against each hamlet within brackets on the right side of the hamlet number. Similarly, sub-blocks will also be numbered in the map. The areas for the selected hg's/ sb's shall be shaded in the map.

2.4.1 Block 4.1: List of hamlets (only for rural samples with hg formation)

2.4.1.0 This block is to be filled in only for the rural samples requiring formation of hamlet-groups (i.e. for $D > 1$). All the hamlets located in the village will be listed in the specified order.

2.4.1.1 *Columns (1) to (3)*: A running serial number for the hamlets will be given in column (1). Name of the hamlets will be written in column (2). Present population of each hamlet expressed as percentage of the total village population will be given in column (3) in whole numbers. Entries in column (3) should add up to 100.

2.4.2 Block 4.2: List and selection of hamlet-groups (hg's)/ sub-blocks (sb's)

2.4.2.0 **General**: This block is meant for recording the details of the hg/ sb formation and their selection for FSUs requiring hg/ sb formation (i.e. with $D > 1$). Reference may be made to paragraphs 2.0.3, 2.0.3.1 and 2.0.4 for the procedures of formation and numbering of hg's/ sb's.

2.4.2.1 **Column (1): serial no. of hg/ sb**: The hg's/ sb's formed will be given a running serial number (starting from 1) in column (1) as per the guidelines given in paragraphs 2.0.3, 2.0.3.1 and 2.0.4. The last serial number in this column will be the value of 'D' which is to be recorded against 'D' below the block heading.

2.4.2.2 **Column (2): serial no. of hamlets in the hg (rural only)**: This column is to be filled up only for rural FSUs. The serial numbers of the hamlets recorded in column (1) of block 4.1 constituting each hamlet-group are to be recorded in column (2) separated by commas.

2.4.2.3 **Column (3): percentage (%) population in the hg/ sb**: Approximate present population of the hg/ sb in terms of percentage to total FSU population will be recorded in column (3) in whole number. Entries in this column should always add up to 100.

2.4.2.4 **Column (4): sampling serial number of hg/ sb**: First locate the hg/ sb with maximum percentage of population in column (3) and enter '0' against this hg in column (4). If this percentage population in column (3) is same for more than one hg/ sb, the one among them listed first in this block may be assigned '0' in this column. Then, other listed hg's/ sb's may be

serially numbered from 1 to $(D - 1)$ in this column starting from the top. These will be the sampling serial numbers for selecting another hg/ sb.

2.4.2.5 Column (5): sample hg/ sb number: Two hg's/ sb's will be selected from the large FSU for the purpose of survey. Enter '1' in this column against the sampling serial number '0' in column (4). This will be sample hg/ sb 1. The procedure for selecting sample hg/ sb 2 is as follows:

Draw a random number, say R, between 1 and $(D - 1)$ using random number table. Enter 2 in column (5) against the sampling serial number in column (4) which equals R.

The selected serial numbers may be encircled in column (4). For all other hg's/ sb's (except the two selected), column (5) may be left blank.

2.5 Block 5: List of households and record of selection of households (hg/ sb 1/ 2)

2.5.0.1 In this block, various information are to be recorded separately for each selected hg/ sb. When there is no hg/ sb formation in the FSU, the hg/ sb number will be '1'.

2.5.0.2 This is the main block of the schedule. Listing of all houses and households along with collection of a few particulars for identification, preparation of sampling frame, formation of second stage strata and selection of sample households for the schedules 21.1 and 1.2 are to be carried out in this block.

2.5.0.3 It is essential to ensure that there is no omission or duplication of any house or household. A house to house enquiry will be made to list all the houses and households. *Households, which are found to be locked (including such households which are absent in the present place for a period of less than six months during last one year) at the time of listing, are also to be listed and included in the frame of households before sample selection.* After obtaining from the neighbours as much details as possible about the absentee households, attempt should be made to contact the households at the appropriate hours (even outside the normal working hours of the investigators) and if need be by revisiting the households during the survey period in the sample FSU. While listing a house the investigator shall find out how many households (including locked households) reside there and list all of them. After this, the investigator will proceed to list the next house. In order to ensure complete listing of houses/ households, it is better to follow some definite order for listing. The order followed in 2001 Population Census may be adopted, wherever possible, taking care that any house that has come up later is not omitted; otherwise, listing may be done in serpentine manner starting from the north-west corner and moving southwards. The names of any natural grouping of the houses like hamlet, street, mohalla, etc. and date of listing may be written at the top before the listing of houses starts. This will help in checking completeness.

2.5.0.4 If there is hg/ sb formation in the FSU, listing of houses and households will be done for sample hg/ sb no. 1 first. The serial number of sample hg/ sb and the names of hamlets will be written before the listing of households starts. After completing the listing of houses/ households of each hamlet of the sample hg, one line will be left blank. On completion of the job for sample hg/ sb 1, listing for sample hg/ sb 2, if formed in the FSU, will be taken up in a separate page of block 5.

First tick-mark the appropriate hg/ sb number (1 or 2) in the heading of the block 5 correctly and cross the one not applicable.

Various columns of block 5 are described below:

2.5.1 Column (1): house number: All houses including vacant ones shall be listed by giving a house number. The 2001 Population Census house number or the number given by the local panchayat, municipality or other local bodies, may be used if available. The houses without such numbers will be given a separate running serial number starting from 1 within brackets. Wherever house numbers are available, even if not for all the houses, the actual house numbers shall be recorded without any brackets. After listing all the households associated with a house, the next house shall be listed. If the house is used solely for non-residential purposes or is vacant, the purpose to which it is put will be written across the line, e.g. temple, vacant structure, etc. For family living under a tree or bridge etc. (i.e. without any house), a ‘-’ may be put in this column.

2.5.2 Column (2): household serial number: The household(s) normally residing in the house or in a fixed location (e.g. under a tree/ bridge/ open space etc.) listed in column (1) will be numbered in column (2). All households (including those found temporarily absent) will be given a running serial number in this column starting from 1. In case of persons staying, say, in hostels and forming single member households, each of them will be listed in separate lines giving a household serial number. Continuous serial number starting from 1 will be given in column (2) for each of the sample hg’s/ sb’s 1 & 2 separately. This column will be left blank for the lines meant for vacant houses, non-residential buildings, etc.

2.5.3 Column (3): name of head of household: For a household having serial number in column (2), the name of the head shall be recorded here.

2.5.4 Column (4): household size: The size of each household as defined in Chapter One will be recorded in this column. A small box space is provided against this column at the end of each page to record the total for this column.

2.5.5 Column (5): structure type code (rural): The type of structure in which the household resides may be entered in code in this column. The codes are:

<u>type of structure</u>	<u>code</u>
pucca	1
semi pucca	2
others (including those with no structure)	3

2.5.6 Column (6) – (8): These columns are relevant for urban samples only.

2.5.6.1 Column (6): average monthly total consumer expenditure for the entire household (Rs): The household consumer expenditure has been explained in Chapter One. The average of total monthly consumer expenditure incurred by the household during last 12 months may be recorded in this column in whole number of rupees.

For locked household, a ‘–’ may be recorded in this column.

2.5.6.2 Column (7): MPCE (Rs. in whole numbers): Monthly per capita expenditure of the household will be recorded in this column. The figure will be derived by dividing the average monthly expenditure (column 6) by the household size (column 4) and rounding it off to the nearest whole number.

For locked household, a ‘–’ may be recorded in this column.

2.5.6.3 Column (8): MPCE code: Two cut-off points ‘A’ and ‘B’ (in Rs.) have been determined from NSS 61st round data for **each NSS region** for urban areas in such a way that top 30% of the population have monthly per capita expenditure (MPCE) equal to or more than ‘B’ and bottom 30% of the population have MPCE equal to or less than ‘A’. The values of ‘A’ and ‘B’ are given in Table 2.

Table 2: The values of urban cut-off points A and B (MPCE in Rs) for each NSS region

State/UT (1)	NSS Region (2)	description (3)	cut-off values	
			A (4)	B (5)
Andhra Pradesh	281	Coastal Northern	600	1,144
	282	Coastal Southern	623	1,061
	283	Inland North Western	566	1,037
	284	Inland North Eastern	554	940
	285	Inland Southern	467	901
Arunachal Pradesh	121	Arunachal Pradesh	629	1,010
Assam	181	Plains Eastern	748	1,520
	182	Plains Western	695	1,172
	183	Cachar Plain	492	863
	184	Central Brahmaputra Plains	553	952
Bihar	101	Northern	386	708
	102	Central	418	808
Chhattisgarh	221	Northern Chhattisgarh	655	1,040
	222	Mahanadi Basin	472	1,040
	223	Southern Chhattisgarh	355	705
Goa	301	Goa	773	1,255
Gujarat	241	South Eastern	819	1,316
	242	Plains Northern	679	1,344
	243	Dry areas	675	951
	244	Kachchh	494	1,014
	245	Saurashtra	643	1,021

Table 2: The values of urban cut-off points A and B (MPCE in Rs) for each NSS region

State/UT	NSS Region	description	cut-off values	
			A	B
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
Haryana	061	Eastern	683	1,244
	062	Western	553	991
Himachal Pradesh	021	Central	828	1,341
	022	Trans Himalayan & Southern	878	1,558
Jammu & Kashmir	011	Mountainous	850	1,527
	012	Outer Hills	759	971
	013	Jhelam Valley	740	1,083
	014	Ladakh*	*740	*1,083
Jharkhand	201	Ranchi Plateau	552	1,065
	202	Hazaribagh Plateau	557	1,097
Karnataka	291	Coastal & Ghats	482	1,098
	292	Inland Eastern	587	990
	293	Inland Southern	741	1,436
	294	Inland Northern	438	742
Kerala	321	Northern	534	1,004
	322	Southern	754	1,476
Madhya Pradesh	231	Vindhya	491	996
	232	Central	436	844
	233	Malwa	536	1,210
	234	South	449	917
	235	South Western	462	825
	236	Northern	438	688
Maharashtra	271	Coastal	844	1,476
	272	Inland Western	608	1,044
	273	Inland Northern	506	1,090
	274	Inland Central	400	712
	275	Inland Eastern	516	902
	276	Eastern	588	978
Manipur	141	Plains	595	798
	142	Hills	485	739

* No previous data for Ladakh is available as there was no consumer expenditure survey done earlier in the region. Cut-off values are taken as that of the neighbouring region.

Table 2: The values of urban cut-off points A and B (MPCE in Rs) for each NSS region

State/UT	NSS Region	description	cut-off values	
			A	B
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
Meghalaya	171	Meghalaya	770	1,430
Mizoram	151	Mizoram	834	1,346
Nagaland	131	Nagaland	1,035	1,698
Orissa	211	Coastal	448	896
	212	Southern	389	777
	213	Northern	426	852
Punjab	031	Northern	734	1,274
	032	Southern	697	1,339
Rajasthan	081	Western	594	1,015
	082	North-Eastern	529	989
	083	Southern	604	1,116
	084	South-Eastern	606	1,108
	085	Northern	479	798
Sikkim	111	Sikkim	812	1,257
Tamil Nadu	331	Coastal Northern	663	1,365
	332	Coastal	622	1,138
	333	Southern	523	894
	334	Inland	599	1,091
Tripura	161	Tripura	588	1,077
Uttarakhand	051	Uttarakhand	580	1,034
Uttar Pradesh	091	Northern Upper Ganga Plains	505	881
	092	Central	537	1,077
	093	Eastern	439	758
	094	Southern	401	710
	095	Southern Upper Ganga Plains	453	901
West Bengal	191	Himalayan	495	1,103
	192	Eastern Plains	454	981
	193	Southern Plains	698	1,406
	194	Central Plains	535	1,037
	195	Western Plains	557	970

Table 2: The values of urban cut-off points A and B (MPCE in Rs) for each NSS region

State/UT	NSS Region	description	cut-off values	
			A	B
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
A & N Islands	351	A & N Islands	1,009	1,829
Chandigarh	041	Chandigarh	897	2,116
D & N Haveli	261	D & N Haveli	1,019	1,729
Daman & Diu	251	Daman & Diu	777	1,098
Delhi	071	Delhi	794	1,409
Lakshadweep	311	Lakshadweep	840	1,454
Pondicherry	341	Pondicherry	611	1,160

For entry in column (8), MPCE of the household in column (7) may be compared with the values of 'A' and 'B'. The criteria for MPCE codes to be entered in this column are as follows:

<u>Criteria</u>	<u>MPCE code to be entered</u>
MPCE \geq B	1
A < MPCE < B	2
MPCE \leq A	3

For locked household, MPCE code 2 may be given.

2.5.7 Column (9): did any household member perform any trip during last 30 days:

Probing may be done regarding the trips undertaken by the household members during last 30 days. For definition of a 'trip', Chapter One may be referred. Trips made for the purposes of (i) taking up employment or (ii) setting up of residence or (iii) migration will not be treated as a trip for the purpose of the present survey. Codes 1, 2 or 3 may be entered in this column depending on the replies given:

<u>Reply</u>	<u>Code</u>
Yes: at least one member performed an overnight trip during last 30 days	1
Yes: no member performed any overnight trip during last 30 days but at least one member performed a same day trip during last 30 days	2
No: none of the members performed any trip during last 30 days	3

For locked household, code 3 may be given.

2.5.8 Columns (10) – (14): Schedule 21.1: SSS: sampling serial number: It may be recalled that for schedule 21.1, there will be five SSS. These columns are meant for preparation of frames for the five SSS of schedule 21.1. All the households including the locked households with a serial number in col. (2) will be tick-marked (\surd) in one and only one of the five columns following the procedure given below.

For households with code 1 in column (9), tick-mark (\surd) will be given either in column (10) or column (11):

In rural samples, the households with 'structure type' code 1 in column (5) will be , tick-marked in column (10) while the households with 'structure type' code 2 or 3 in column (5) tick-will be tick-marked in column (11).

In urban samples, for the households with MPCE code 1 in column 8, tick-marks are to be given in column (10) while for those with MPCE code 2 or 3 in column 8, tick-marks may be given in column (11).

For households with code 2 in column (9), tick-mark (\surd) will be given either in column (12) or column (13):

In rural samples, the households with 'structure type' code 1 in column (5) will be , tick-marked in column (12) while the households with 'structure type' code 2 or 3 in column (5) tick-will be tick-marked in column (13).

In urban samples, for the households with MPCE code 1 in column 8, tick-marks are to be given in column (12) while for those with MPCE code 2 or 3 in column 8, tick-marks may be given in column (13).

For the remaining households with code 3 in column (9), tick-marks (\surd) will be given in column (14) only.

The tick-marks (\surd) in cols.(10)/ (11)/ (12)/ (13)/ (14) will then be serially numbered starting from 1 independently and separately in all the five columns and these will be the sampling serial numbers for SSS 1, SSS 2, SSS 3, SSS 4 and SSS 5 respectively. The values of H, the highest serial numbers in each of these columns will be recorded against 'H' in the space provided in the column headings. **It must be ensured/checked that sum of these 'H' values for columns 10 to 14 tallies with the last household serial number in column 2.**

2.5.9 Columns (15) – (19): Schedule 21.1: SSS: sample household number: Number of sample households to be selected (h) for each combination of (hg/ sb) \times SSS has been given in Chapter One. The values of 'h' are to be recorded in the space under the column headings.

For selecting the sample households of any particular (hg/ sb) \times SSS by SRSWOR, the following procedure will be followed. Suppose 'H' denotes the total number of households in the

frame [i.e. the highest entry in column (10)/ (11)/ (12)/ (13)/ (14)] and 'h' the number of households to be selected. If $H = h$, all the households will be selected and no random number needs to be drawn. Otherwise, first draw a random number, say R_1 , between 1 and H . Next, draw another random number, say, R_2 , also between 1 and H . If $R_2 = R_1$, then reject R_2 and draw a fresh R_2 . Continue this way till requisite number of distinct R 's [i.e. $R_1, R_2, \dots, R(h)$] have been drawn. Then the households with sampling serial numbers $R_1, R_2, \dots, R(h)$ [in column (10)/ (11)/ (12)/(13)/(14)] will be the selected households and be given sample household numbers as 1, 2,....., h respectively in columns (15)/ (16)/ (17)/ (18)/ (19). Encircle the corresponding sampling serial numbers in columns (10)/ (11)/ (12)/ (13)/ (14).

2.5.10 Columns (20) – (22): Schedule 1.2: SSS: sampling serial number: There will be three SSS for the schedule 1.2. Sampling frames for SSS 1, 2 & 3 will be prepared through these columns. If there is any household with code 1 in column (5) in case of rural FSU or code 1 in column (8) in case of urban FSU, a tick-mark (\checkmark) will be given against the household in col.(20). For the households with code 2 in column (5) in case of rural FSU or code 2 in column (8) in case of urban FSU, a tick-mark (\checkmark) will be given against the households in col.(21). Remaining households will be tick-marked in col.(22). The tick-marks (\checkmark) in cols.(20)/ (21)/ (22) will then be serially numbered starting from 1 independently in each of the three columns.

The values of H , the highest serial nos. in each of these columns will be recorded against 'H' in the space provided in the column headings. **The sum of these 'H' values for columns 20 to 22 must tally with the last household serial number in column 2.**

2.5.11 Columns (23) – (25): Schedule 1.2: SSS: sample household number: The number of households to be selected (h) for each combination of (hg/ sb) \times SSS has been given in Chapter One. The values are to be recorded in the space under the column headings. The sample households will be selected with SRSWOR in each (hg/ sb) \times SSS. The procedure is similar to that described for schedule 21.1 in para 2.5.9 **with the modification that if the sample household is found to have been already selected for schedule 21.1, it will be replaced by the next non-selected household in the frame.** The household selected after replacement will be treated as the originally selected household. The sampling serial number of this household will be encircled twice. This modification has been done with a view to select separate households for the two schedule types. *However, if the number of households in the frame is so small that distinct sample households cannot be selected for schedule type 1.2 following the procedure for replacement, the restriction of distinct households need not be adhered to. In such a situation, one or more sample households may be common for both the schedule types.* In such cases both schedules 21.1 as well as 1.2 will be canvassed in the same household.

2.6 Block 6: particulars of sampling of households: Particulars of sampling of households, separately for schedules 21.1 and 1.2 for each of the hg/ sb 1 & 2 will be recorded in this block. If there is no hg/ sb formation, entry will be made against hg/ sb 1.

2.6.1 Column (3): population: Population as obtained by summing up the page totals of household sizes in column (4) of block 5 over all the listed households may be recorded in this column separately for hg/ sb 1 & 2 against the rows for schedule 21.1. The total of populations of hg/ sb 1 & 2 will be recorded in the cell for the corresponding hg/sb.

2.6.2 Columns (5) to (10): number of households: Total number of households in the frame of various SSS of schedules 21.1 and 1.2 will be recorded in the corresponding cells of column (5) for each hg/sb. Number of selected households will be copied in column (6). These are to be copied from the relevant columns of block 5. References are as below:

Schedule 21.1: Column (5) entries for SSS will be equal to the value of 'H' recorded in heading spaces of columns (10) – (14) of block 5 for each hg/ sb while column (6) entries will be the value of 'h' recorded in heading spaces of columns (15) – (19) of block 5.

Schedule 1.2: Column (5) entries for SSS will be equal to the value of 'H' recorded in heading spaces of columns (20) – (22) of block 5 for each hg/ sb while column (6) entries will be the value of 'h' recorded in heading spaces of columns (23) – (25) of block 5.

Columns (7), (8) and (10) of block 6 may be filled up on the basis of survey codes given in item 18, block 1 of the respective schedules. The entries in columns (7), (8) & (10) will be the number of filled in schedules with the survey codes 1, 2 & 3 in the corresponding schedules respectively. Total number households surveyed will be entered in column (9). It may be seen that (i) column (9) = column (7) + column (8) and (ii) column (10) = column (6) - column (9).

2.6.3 Column (11): number of replaced households: Total number of households for schedule 1.2 replaced (being already selected for schedule 21.1) will be reported for all SSS separately for hg/ sb 1 & 2 against the rows for schedule 1.2. Entries will be the number of double circles in columns (20)/ (21)/ (22) of block 5 for each hg/ sb. Entry against 'all' will be sum of SSS 1 – 3 for hg/ sb 1 & 2.

2.7 Block 7: distance of the village to the nearest facility and availability of some amenities in the village: In this block, it is aimed to collect information on the availability of some specific facilities like communication, educational institutions, health institutions, wholesale markets, banks, credit societies, drainage, etc. in rural FSUs. *In case of hamlet-group formation, information are to be collected in respect of the entire sample FSU.*

If a facility is available in general to the residents of an FSU, it will be considered as a facility. The required information has to be obtained by contacting the village officials and / or other knowledgeable person(s). In case they are not aware of the existence of a particular facility, the nearest Block Development Officer or other related agencies may be contacted for collection of the relevant information.

The block will be filled-in for rural inhabited FSUs and will be kept blank for FSUs that are uninhabited or are zero cases.

This block may be filled in after completion of listing of households.

2.7.1 Items 1- 35: Column (3): distance code:

Distance in terms of code will be entered in this column against items 1 to 35. Distance from the nearest facility available to the villagers will be considered. The distance will be measured from the geographical centre of the village irrespective of whether hamlet-groups have been formed or not. However, if a particular facility is available within the village, the distance code will always

be 1 irrespective of its distance from the centre of the village. One of the codes 2 to 6 will be applicable when the facility is available at a place outside the village. If a facility is available at two different places, the distance of the nearest place will be considered for recording the distance code. In this connection, it may be noted that if at a particular location, more than one facility is available in a combined form and if that location is the nearest one to the village in respect of all the facilities under consideration, then the distance code of that location is to be recorded against all the facilities. For example if the nearest secondary school also provides primary education and the nearest primary school is farther away than the secondary school then the distance code of the secondary school is to be recorded for the primary school also. The codes for distances are:

within village.....	1
outside village:	
less than 2 kms.....	2
2 kms. or more but less than 5 kms.....	3
5 kms. or more but less than 10 kms.....	4
10 kms. or more but less than 20 kms.....	5
20 kms. or more.....	6

Most of the items listed in the block are self-explanatory. However, some of the terms are explained below.

2.7.1.1 Items 1- 7: These items are self – explanatory. In States/ UTs where districts do not have block/ mandal, block/ mandal headquarters will mean headquarters of immediately lower administrative unit under the district.

For item 1, code ‘1’ will not be applicable. Also, the distance from the centre of the village to the centre of the town will be considered for recording the appropriate code against item 1.

2.7.1.2 Item 8: metalled road: This will include roads made of pucca materials like asphalt, cement, concrete, bricks, stones, etc.

2.7.1.3 Item 9: all weather road: This is the road usable for all seasons of a year irrespective of the material used for the road.

2.7.1.4 Item 10: school having primary level classes: Generally, up to the standard of class IV is considered as primary education. However, the practices differ in some states where education of class V is also included under ‘primary’ level. For the purpose of this survey, education up to class IV or V, as the local practice may be, will be considered as primary education. This item will cover institutions providing such educational facilities.

2.7.1.5 Item 11: school having secondary level classes: Secondary level means education up to class- X. A school providing secondary level education will be considered for entry against this item.

2.7.1.6 Item 12: higher secondary school/ junior college: Higher secondary school provides education up to 10+2 standard. In some places it is also known as junior college. Institutions providing education up to 10+2 standard will be covered under this item.

2.7.1.7 **Item 13: college:** Colleges providing degree courses with a minimum of bachelor degree recognised by a university or equivalent will be covered under this item. Colleges providing diploma courses, which are equivalent to degree courses, are also to be covered under this item.

2.7.1.8 **Item 14: health sub-centre/ dispensary:** A health sub-centre is the most peripheral contact point in the primary health care system. It covers around 5,000 populations in plain area and 3,000 populations in hilly/ tribal area. It is run by government and located in the rural area. It is manned by two multi-purpose health workers – one male and one female. A sub-centre usually does not have facilities for treatment as in-patients. Dispensary is the consulting place/ chamber which does not generally have facilities for treatment of in-patients.

2.7.1.9 **Item 15: primary health centre:** Primary health centre (PHC) is the first contact point between a village community and the medical officer. It has a medical officer and other paramedical staff. It is run by the Government and usually has in-patient and out-patient facilities. A PHC has jurisdiction over 6 sub-centres and serves about 30,000 populations in plain area and 20,000 populations in hilly/ tribal area.

2.7.1.10 **Item 16: community health centre/ government hospital:** Community Health Centres (CHC) serves about 1.2 lakh populations in plain area and 80,000 in the hilly/ tribal area. The CHC functions as referral centre for the PHC. It is manned by medical specialists and paramedical staff and has in-patient and out-patient facilities. Medical institutions having provision of admission of sick persons as in-door patients (in-patients) for treatment are called hospitals. Hospital run by the central/ state government or local bodies like municipalities will be covered under this item.

2.7.1.11 **Item 17: private clinic/ doctor:** Private clinic is the consulting place/ chamber of private doctors. Doctors are those having degrees/ diploma in medicine and also registration from recognised universities/ institutions deemed to be universities. These doctors may follow any of the systems – allopathic, homeopathy, ayurvedic, unani.

2.7.1.12 **Item 18: medicine shop:** A shop which sells drugs and medicines of any system of medicine viz. allopathic, homeopathic, ayurvedic or unani medicines, will be considered as a medicine shop.

2.7.1.13 **Item 19: community centre:** It is a place accessible to the villagers where facilities of viewing TV, video, etc., arranging ceremonies like marriage, festivals and other community programmes, etc., are available. The centre is generally located at a fixed place. The villagers will have access to the centre.

2.7.1.14 **Items 20 – 23: post office, library, park/playground, police station/ police outpost:** The items are self-explanatory.

2.7.1.15 **Item 24: wholesale market:** Wholesale market is a market where the buying and selling of goods or merchandise is done to retailers and other merchants and commercial users but generally not to ultimate consumers. Thus, it is a market where wholesaler acts as a middleman between producer and retailer or ultimate consumer. The operations like sales, purchases and prices etc. of a wholesale market are sometimes supervised/ controlled by market committee or some other agency.

2.7.1.16 **Item 25: cooperative credit society:** Co-operative credit society is a society that is formed through the co-operation of a number of persons (members of the society) for the benefit of the members. The funds are raised through contributions/ investments by the members and the profits are shared by the members. Cooperative banks will also be considered here.

2.7.1.17 **Item 26: commercial bank:** This includes all nationalised banks including the State Bank of India and its subsidiaries. All other scheduled and non-scheduled banks, other than co-operative banks, should also be considered here.

2.7.1.18 **Item 27: land development bank:** Land development banks are co-operative societies established for advancing loans for acquiring assets of capital nature connected with land improvements, productivity of land and agricultural development. The land development banks sanction long terms loans, which are repayable over a period exceeding five years. If a cooperative bank performs the activities of a land development bank in addition to the usual activities of a cooperative bank, it will be considered under item 23 and not under this item.

2.7.1.19 **Item 28: marketing society:** Co-operative marketing society means a registered society established for the purpose of promoting marketing facilities primarily of agricultural produce. The marketing society receives the produce directly from the producers or through primary credit societies. The produce is then sold in different markets or to the high level marketing organisations etc. In addition to the marketing function, the societies may also undertake supply of agricultural requisites such as seeds, manure and fertilizer, pesticides and insecticides etc.

2.7.1.20 **Item 29: PCO:** Distance of the facility which is nearest to the village among telegraph office/ public call office (PCO)/ e-mail centre will be recorded in this item in code. A public call office or e-mail centre will refer to a place accessible to the villagers with or without payment of fee. E-mail is the electronic mail, which is sent through network (internet) from one place to another.

2.7.1.21 **Item 30: video parlour/ cinema hall:** Distance of the nearest video parlour/ cinema hall will be recorded in terms of codes.

2.7.1.22 **Item 31: veterinary hospital/ dispensary:** A veterinary hospital/ dispensary has provision for the treatment of animals.

2.7.1.23 **Item 32: fertiliser/ pesticide shop:** Fertiliser/ pesticide shop is one which sells fertiliser and / or pesticide.

2.7.1.24 **Item 33: fair price shop:** Fair price shop is the shop, which sells some essential commodities at subsidised rate. This may be owned by the government, local self-government, a government undertaking, the proprietor of a firm, co-operative(s) or private persons (individually or jointly) or other bodies like club, trust, etc.

2.7.1.25 **Items 34-35: cold storage, Industrial Training Institute:** These items are self-explanatory.

2.7.2 **Items 36 - 39: Column (3): availability of amenities in the village (code):**

2.7.2.1 **Item 36: Major source of drinking water:** Major source of water used for drinking by the residents of the FSU may be identified and recorded in codes here. The codes are:

<u>major source</u>	<u>code</u>
bottled water	01
tap	02
tube well/ hand pump	03
well:	
protected	04
unprotected	05
tank/ pond (reserved for drinking)	06
other tank/ pond	07
river/ canal/ lake	08
spring	10
harvested rainwater	11
others	19

2.7.2.2 Item 37: approach road/ lane/ constructed path remain waterlogged in monsoon (yes-1, no-2): Code 1 or 2 will be entered as per the information obtained.

2.7.2.3 Item 38: type of drainage arrangement: The information may be recorded in codes. The codes are:

<u>type of drainage</u>	<u>code</u>
underground	1
covered pucca	2
open pucca	3
open katcha	4
no drainage	5

2.7.2.4 Item 39: electricity connection (code): The information is to be recorded in code. The codes are:

<u>availability of electricity connection</u>	<u>code</u>
yes:	
percentage (P) of households connected:	
P < 10%	1
10% ≤ P < 25%	2
25% ≤ P < 50%	3
50% ≤ P < 75%	4
P ≥ 75%	5
no:	6

If no household is using electricity, code will be 6.

2.7.3 Item 40: informant code: The information in block 7 is to be collected from one or more knowledgeable person(s) of the village. The source of such information collected is to be reported in this item. In case there is more than one source then the code will relate to the informant from whom maximum information has been collected. The codes are:

sarpanch male).....	1
sarpanch (female).....	2
other panchayat member	3
patwari/gram sewak	4
teacher.....	5
health personnel.....	6
others.....	9

2.8 Block 8: particulars relating to public works programme in the village: The purpose of this block is to collect some information about public works taken up in the village during last 12 months. For explanation of the term public works, reference may be made to Chapter One. Enquiries about the most recent public works programme will also be made through the block. *In case of hamlet-group formation, information are to be collected in respect of the entire sample village.*

The required information has to be obtained by contacting the panchayat/ village officials and / or other knowledgeable person(s). In case they are unable to provide any information about public works programmes in the village, the nearest Block Development Officer or other related agencies might be contacted for collection of the relevant information.

The block will be filled-in for inhabited villages and will be kept blank for villages that are uninhabited or are zero cases.

This block may be filled in after completion of listing of households.

2.8.1 Item 1: whether any public works taken up in the village in last 12 months? (yes – 1, no – 2): If any public work was in operation in the village during last 12 months, code ‘1’ will be entered, otherwise ‘2’ will be entered. Public works might be of different types, e.g. road construction, building construction, land levelling, digging of ponds, making embankments, digging/ construction of irrigation canal, etc. They might be sponsored under various ‘public works programme’ such as National Rural Employment Guarantee Programme (NREGP), Sampoorna Grameen Rojgar Yojana (SGRY), National Food for Work Scheme (NFFWP), etc. Two or more ‘types of public works’ might be taken up under same ‘public works programme’ or one of them might be sponsored under one ‘public works programme’ while others might be sponsored under another ‘public works programme’. Also, same ‘type of public works’ might be undertaken at different points of time under different ‘public works programmes’.

For code ‘2’ against this item, items 2 – 8 will remain blank.

2.8.2 Item 2: number of public works taken up in last 12 months: The number of distinct public works under different programmes that were in operation in the village during last 12 months will be recorded here. If same ‘type of public works’ were carried out under two different ‘public works programme’, it will be counted only once.

2.8.3 Items 3 – 8: These items relate to the most recent *public works programme*. If two or more types of public works were in operation under the same public works programme, information will relate to the public work that *started later*. But if there were two or more public works in operation under more than one public works programme, the information will relate to the *public*

works programme that started later and the type of public work will be the one that started later under the same public works programme.

2.8.3.1 Item 3: type of programme (code): After identifying the most recent public works programme, codes will be entered for the public works programme as follows:

<u>type of programme</u>	<u>code</u>
National Rural Employment Guarantee Programme (NREG)	1
Sampoorna Grameen Rojgar Yojana (SGRY).....	2
National Food for Work Scheme (NFFWP)	3
Any other wage employment programme for ‘poverty alleviation’ or as ‘relief measure’	4

2.8.3.2 Item 4: type of public works (code): Type of work, most recent one under the most recent public works programme, will be recorded here in terms of code. The codes are:

<u>type of public works</u>	<u>code</u>
irrigation canal/ water conservation/ water harvesting/ drought proofing/ flood control/ embankment etc.	1
land levelling, development of orchard etc.....	2
road construction, laying pipes and cables.....	3
building construction/ repair.....	4
sanitation, running creche, etc.....	5
any other work.....	9

2.8.3.3 Item 5: wage rate for public works (Rs.): Wage rate given to the persons working under the most recent public works programme in the village will be reported here in whole number of rupees. If there were more than one wage rate, average wage rate will be reported.

2.8.3.4 Item 6: prevailing casual agricultural wage rate at that time (Rs.): The prevailing wage rate for casual workers in agriculture during the time of operation of the most recent public works programme in the village will be reported here in whole number of rupees. If there is more than one agricultural wage rate, e.g. different rates for males and females or for different agricultural activities, the average wage rate will be reported.

2.8.3.5 Item 7: who made the choice of the public works: Code for the authority deciding the choice of the type of public work under reference will be recorded in this item. The codes are:

gram panchayat.....	1
zila parishad	2
State Govt... ..	3
don't know.....	4

2.8.3.6 Item 8: was there enough work on public works to satisfy demand?: Perception of the informant about the sufficiency of work generated by the type of public works under consideration in relation to the demand for work will be recorded here. The codes are: *yes – 1, no – 2, don't know – 3.*

2.8.4 Item 9: informant code: Code will be entered against this item even if there was no public work in the village. The information is to be collected from one or more knowledgeable person(s) of the village. The source of such information collected is to be reported in this item. In case there is more than one source then the code will relate to the informant from whom maximum information has been collected. The codes are:

sarpanch (male).....	1
sarpanch (female).....	2
other panchayat member.....	3
patwari/gram sewak	4
others.....	9

2.9 Block 9: remarks by investigator/senior investigator: The investigator/ senior investigator may give remarks here on any abnormal situation or entry in the schedule.

2.10 Block 10: comments by superintendent/ senior Superintendent: The Superintendent/ Senior Superintendent may give remarks here on any abnormal situation or entry in the schedule.

2.11 Block 11: comments by other supervisory officer(s): The supervising officer inspecting the work relating to this schedule may give comments here.

2.12 Substitution of sample households:

If a sample household of a particular schedule type cannot be surveyed due to some reason or the other, it will be substituted by the next one having higher sampling serial number (provided not already selected) of the same SSS. The substitute for the one having last sampling serial number of an SSS will be the one having smallest sampling serial number within the same SSS. If the substituted household becomes a casualty, *it will be substituted by another in the same manner. If this household also turns out to be a casualty, further substitute need not be taken. However, it must be ensured that for each schedule type (i.e. Schedule 21.1/ 1.2), a minimum of one sample household is always surveyed for each SSS if H>0 and for each hg/ sb. Substitution may be attempted more than twice in a few cases to adhere to this restriction.* In such cases, the fact has to be recorded in the remarks block (blocks 9 & 10).

It is to be noted that in the case of a substitution of a household, the word “SUBSTITUTED” should be written at the top of the front page of schedule.

2.13 Random numbers: A table of random numbers is supplied to each investigator. The $n - th$ column of the table will be consulted in the case of the central sample and $(n + 1) th$ column in the case of the state sample, where n is the last two digits of the serial number of the sample FSU. When $n = 00$, it will be taken as 100. The number of digits to be used will be the same as that of the highest number of the range within which the random number is to be selected. However, if random number is required to be drawn between 1 and 10 or between 1 and 100, only one or two digit random numbers may be used, as the cases may be, where random number ‘0’ will stand for ‘10’ and random number ‘00’ for ‘100’.

The first random number will be used for hamlet-group/ sub-block selection whenever required. The subsequent random numbers may be used for selection of households in the order: (i) for hg/ sb 1 – households for five SSS of schedule 21.1, households for three SSS of schedule 1.2 and then (ii) for hg/ sb 2 – households for five SSS of schedule 21.1, households for three SSS of schedule 1.2. If the particular column of random numbers is exhausted in the process, next column may be used. Similarly, if all the columns of the random number table are exhausted, then the first column will be used.

2.14 Substitution of sample FSU:

- (a) If a sample FSU cannot be surveyed due to say, it being not uniquely identifiable or traceable, not accessible or for any other reason, it will be substituted. All such cases will be referred to:

The Director (TC), DPD, NSSO,
Mahalanobis Bhavan,
164, Gopal Lal Tagore Road, Kolkata- 700108.
e-mail address: dpd_tc@yahoo.co.uk
fax: 033-25771025

A copy of the letter may be given to:

The Director (Coordination), SDRD, NSSO
Mahalanobis Bhawan
164, Gopal Lal Tagore Road, Kolkata- 700108.
e-mail address: sdrd@cal2.vsnl.net.in
fax: 033-25776439, Tele: 033-25781495

If the substituted FSU has same problem as the original, correspondences may be made immediately so that another substitute can be provided to prevent voidness of stratum. In case no substitute FSU could be surveyed even with best efforts [i.e. code 7 in item 17, block 1], a blank schedule 0.0 will be submitted with only blocks 0, 1, 2, 9, 10 and 11 filled in. The word 'CASUALTY' is to be written at the top of the front page of the schedule in such cases.

All efforts must be made to ensure that at least one FSU is always surveyed from each stratum/sub-stratum for each sub-sample so as to prevent occurrences of void strata.

- (b) If a sample FSU is found to be depopulated at the time of survey, or its population has shifted elsewhere due to some natural calamity, or it is treated as a "zero-case", it will not be substituted. It will be treated as a valid sample and blank schedule 0.0 with only blocks 0, 1, 2, 9, 10 and 11 filled in will be submitted in such cases. The word/ words 'UNINHABITED' or 'ZERO CASE', as appropriate will be written on the top of the front page of the schedule in such cases. However, in Arunachal Pradesh and possibly elsewhere also in the hill tracts of North Eastern states where, for example, jhum cultivation is prevalent, whole village may shift from place to place. In such cases the sample village will be surveyed in the place

where it is currently located and not treated as uninhabited if found absent in its original location.

(c) If a sample village is found to have been declared as urban (as a town by itself or as merged in another town) either by State Govt. notification or by Census authorities after Census 2001 and if it is covered in the urban frame used for selection of FSUs, it will be treated as a zero case and the procedure given in the previous para will be followed in this case. However, if it is not covered in the urban frame of FSUs, it is to be surveyed as per the rural programme. In such cases, however, if the boundaries of the original village are not identifiable, it may be substituted. If only a part of the village has been merged in the town, the remaining part will be surveyed as per rural programme even in this situation. *It is suggested* to write to SDRD before treating any sample as a zero case.

(d) *It is important* to note that a listing schedule 0.0 has to be submitted for every sample FSU irrespective of whether it is surveyed/ substituted (including uninhabited and zero cases) or a casualty.

2.15 Repetition of FSUs: If a sample FSU is repeated in the sample list, *it will be surveyed as many times as it has been selected.* The procedures to be followed in respective cases are described below:

2.15.1 Repetition within state or central sample FSUs:

Case (a): without hamlet-group/ sub-block formation: If repetition is in the *same sub-round*, listing is to be done only once. The listing schedule will be copied with the identification particulars changed to those of the serial number against which it is found repeated. (The items that may change are only these: serial number and sub-sample). The sample households will be selected afresh. However, if any household already selected is selected again, it is to be substituted. If the required number of fresh households (i.e. not selected in the first occasion) is not available in the frame as a result of which some households are reselected in the second/ subsequent occasion, entries in various blocks for such household may be copied. If, however, repetition of the FSU takes place in a different sub-round, it is to be surveyed just like a new sample with fresh listing and sample selection.

Case (b): With hamlet-group/ sub-block formation: If repetition is in the *same sub-round*, the hamlet-groups/ sub-blocks formed during the first occasion will be used for all subsequent repetitions. However, on the second and subsequent occasions, the survey will be conducted in the hamlet-groups/ sub-blocks selected afresh. Of course, sample hg/ sb number '1' will remain the same. For the selection of households, the usual procedure as suggested in case (a) may be followed. If, however, repetition of the FSU takes place in a *different sub-round*, it is to be surveyed just like a new sample with fresh listing and sample selection.

An example showing selection of households in Block 5 for a rural FSU without hg formation

[5] list of households and record of selection for households (hg/ sb 1/ 2)																								
house number	household serial number	name of head of house -hold	household size	structure type code (rural)	urban			did any household member perform any trip* during last 30 days ...	schedule 21.1					schedule 1.2										
					average monthly total consumer expenditure for the entire household (Rs)	MPCE (Rs. in whole number) (col. 6 ÷ col. 4)	MPCE code		SSS					SSS										
									sampling serial number			sample household number					sampling serial number			sample household number				
									for code 1 in col. 9		for code 2 in col. 9		for code 3 in col. 9						code 1 in col. 5 (R) or in col. 8 (U)	code 2 in col. 5 (R) or in col. 8 U		code 3 in col. 5 (R) or in col. 8 U		
					code 1 in col. 5 (R) / 8(U)	code 2 or 3 in col. 5 (R) / 8 U	code 1 in col. 5 (R) / 8 U		code 2 or 3 in col. 5 (R) / 8 (U)	code 1 in col. 5 (R) or in col. 8 (U)	code 2 in col. 5 (R) or in col. 8 U	code 3 in col. 5 (R) or in col. 8 U												
1	2	3	4	5	1	2	3	4	5	1	2	3	1	2	3									
H= 7	H= 4	H= 5	H= 7	H=17	h=4	h=2	h=2	h=2	h=2	H=12	H=13	H=15	h=4	h=4	h=4									
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)	(10)	(11)	(12)	(13)	(14)	(15)	(16)	(17)	(18)	(19)	(20)	(21)	(22)	(23)	(24)	(25)
12	1		3	2				3					√1							√1				
13/1	2		5	3				3					√2								√1			
14	3		6	2				2			√1									√2				
-	4		1	3				3					√3								√2			
15B	5		5	1				1	(√1)					3						√1				
9	6		2	2				1		(√1)					1					√3				
10	7		4	3				2			(√2)						2			√3				
16	8		6	2				2			(√3)						1			√4				
17	9		2	1				1	(√2)					4						√2				
18	10		3	1				2			√1									(√3)			3	
19	11		6	2				3					√4							(√5)			1	
20	12		5	3				3					√5								((√4))			1
21	13		3	1				2			(√2)					1				√4				
22	VACANT																							
22/2	14		5	2				3					√6							√6				
22/3	15		4	1				1	√3											((√5))			1	
23	16		8	1				1	√4											(√6)			2	
24	17		4	1				2			√3									((√7))			4	
(1)	18		3	2				3					(√7)					1		√7				
25	19		6	3				3					√8								√5			
26	20		5	3				1		√2											√6			
27	21		2	3				1		(√3)					2						√7			
28	22		3	2				3					√9							((√8))			2	
29	23		1	1				1	(√5)					2						√8				
30	24		2	1				2			(√4)									√9				
page total:			94																					

[5] list of households and record of selection for households (hg/ sb 1/ 2)																									
house number	household serial number	name of head of house -hold	household size	structure type code (rural)	urban			did any household member perform any trip* during last 30 days ...	schedule 21.1					schedule 1.2											
					average monthly total consumer expenditure for the entire household (Rs)	MPCE (Rs. in whole number) (col. 6 ÷ col. 4)	MPCE code		SSS					SSS											
									sampling serial number			sample household number					sampling serial number			sample household number					
									for code 1 in col. 9		for code 2 in col. 9		for code 3 in col. 9						code 1 in col. 5 (R) or in col. 8 (U)	code 2 in col. 5 (R) or in col. 8 (U)		code 3 in col. 5 (R) or in col. 8 (U)			
					code 1 in col. 5 (R) / 8(U)	code 2 or 3 in col. 5 (R) / 8 (U)	code 1 in col. 5 (R) / 8 (U)		code 2 or 3 in col. 5 (R) / 8 (U)	1	2	3														4	5	1	2	3
H= 7	H= 4	H= 5	H= 7	H=17	h=4	h=2	h=2	h=2	h=2	H=12	H=13	H=15	h=4	h=4	h=4										
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)	(10)	(11)	(12)	(13)	(14)	(15)	(16)	(17)	(18)	(19)	(20)	(21)	(22)	(23)	(24)	(25)	
31	25		5	2				3						√10							(√9)			3	
(3)	26		3	3				3						√11								√8			3
(4)	27		4	3				2				√4										√9			
32	28		3	2				2													√10				
33	29		5	2				3						√12							√11				
34	30		6	1				1	(√6)						1						√10				
35	31		2	3				3					(√13)										√10		
35A/1	32		4	3				3					√14									√11			
35A/2	33		3	3				2				√6										√12			4
35A/3	34		5	3				3					√15									√13			2
36A	35		3	2				1		√4											(√12)			4	
36B	36		4	1				1	√7												√11				
42	37		3	1				2			√5										√12				
43	38		4	3				3						√16								√14			
44	39		3	2				3						√17							√13				
45	40		4	3				2				√7									√15				
page total:			61																						

random nos. drawn:

Sch 21.1

6, 5, 1, 2	1, 3	2, 4	3, 2	07, 13
------------	------	------	------	--------

Sch 1.2

02, 06, 03, 04	05, 07, 09, 12	03, 13, 08, 12
----------------	----------------	----------------

col.(5): structure type code (only for rural samples): pucca – 1, semi pucca – 2, others – 3

Chapter 3

Schedule 21.1: Domestic tourism

3.1 Introduction

3.1.1 The economic and social importance of domestic tourism in a country like India, endowed with a splendid cultural and historical heritage, hardly needs to be emphasised. However, tourism, by itself, does not constitute any specific industry or sector in the economy. Rather, it is a composite of several traditional sectors like transport, accommodation, etc. Besides, tourism has linkages with distinct patterns of consumption and expenditure. Therefore, the importance of tourism in the national economy is manifold: in generating employment in various industries like hospitality, handicrafts, transport services etc. It also uniquely serves the purpose of maintenance of familial and social bonds, which is a great Indian tradition. Further, in view of the increase in tourism in recent years, tourism-specific development and investment requirements are also on the rise in the national economy.

3.1.2 This schedule is designed to collect detailed information on 'domestic tourism' in India through a nationwide household survey in the 65th round of NSS. This will provide a comprehensive assessment of household characteristics, visitor characteristics, trip characteristics and expenditure characteristics in relation to domestic tourism in India.

3.2 Previous surveys

3.2.1 43rd Round (July 1987 – June 1988)

3.2.1.1 Domestic tourism has not been covered comprehensively in any earlier NSS round. In the past, NSSO undertook an all-India survey covering only a few aspects of domestic tourism in its 43rd Round (July 1987 – June 1988) through a household survey by canvassing Schedule 21 (Travel Habits of Household). In that round, information was collected in two blocks – in the first, for journeys performed during the last 30 days and, in the other, for journeys performed for the purpose of pleasure and pilgrimage during the last 365 days. In both these blocks, information was collected on *number of household members who travelled, name of main destination with separate code for whether that destination is 'within the district', 'outside district but within the state', 'outside the state but within the country' or 'outside the country', purpose of visit, type of journey (package/non-package), mode of transport, place of stay (type of hotel, lodge etc), duration of absence from the normal place of residence, etc. and whether the tour was subsidised or financed by the employer/institution.* The main objective of that survey was to estimate the volume of domestic tourism movements and to identify the motivations of tourism along with the lodging facilities availed by the tourists. In that survey no information was collected on expenditure incurred by tourists.

3.2.2 54th round (January – June 1998)

3.2.2.1 Subsequently, in the 54th round (January – June 1998) of NSS, in Block 7 of Schedule 31 (Common Property Resources, Sanitation & Hygiene, Services) some information on particulars of tours involving overnight stay performed by household members was collected. In that block (details of journeys on tours undertaken by household members ended at any time during the last 60 days and involving overnight stay), information on *purpose of journey, mode of journey,*

distance (one way), duration of journey in hours & minutes, total expenditure on transport and whether the expenditure was subsidised etc. was collected.

3.3 Summary description of the schedule

3.3.1 In the present round, Schedule 21.1 is on domestic tourism and consists of ten blocks with two blocks, viz, Block 5 and Block 6, having two sub-blocks each, namely, Block 5.1 & Block 5.2 and Block 6.1 & Block 6.2 respectively.

3.3.2 The first three blocks, viz., Block 0, Block 1 and Block 2, are to be used for recording identification of sample households and particulars of field operations, as practised in previous rounds. The last three blocks, viz., Block 7, Block 8 and Block 9, are to be used to record the remarks of investigator/senior investigator, superintendent/senior superintendent and other supervisory officer respectively.

3.3.3 Block 3 is meant for recording household characteristics such as household size, principal industry, principal occupation, household type, religion, social group, number of overnight trips undertaken by the household during last 30 days and last 365 days separately, number of same-day trips undertaken by the household during last 30 days and last 365 days separately, whether any NRI visited the household during last 365 days, what was the impact of the NRI visit in influencing the household to undertake any trip, whether some portion of the house was rented out to tourists for at least one night during the last 365 days, whether any member of the household is aware of the “Incredible India” campaign by Govt. of India and if so, where have the member(s) seen/heard the campaign, and what was its impact, whether any member of the household is aware of the tourism promotional campaigns by State Tourism departments / development corporations or any other organisation and if so, where have the member(s) seen/heard the campaign, and what was its impact. This block would also record household consumption expenditure through a set of five questions.

3.3.4 Block 4 is to be used for recording the demographic and other particulars of all the household members. Such particulars include name of the household member, relation to head, sex, age, marital status, educational level, usual principal activity status, NIC (2-digit level) - for employed members, NCO (1-digit) - for employed members, number of overnight trips completed by the member during last 30 days and last 365 days separately, number of same-day trips completed by the member during last 30 days and last 365 days separately.

3.3.5 In Block 5.1 particulars of overnight trips made during last 30 days by household members are to be recorded. These include serial no. of the trip, number of household members in that trip, details of the characteristics of each household member who was in that trip, like serial no. of the member, age of the member, purpose of trip for the member, type of trip, mode of travel: major and minor, type of stay: major and minor, number of nights spent outside usual place of residence (including journey), and also characteristics of the trip like leading purpose of the trip, starting month, ending month, main destination, state code and number of places visited during the trip.

3.3.6 In Block 5.2 particulars of same-day trips made during last 30 days by household members are to be recorded. These include serial no. of the trip, number of household members in that trip, details of the characteristics of each household member who was in that trip like serial no. of the member, age of the member, purpose of trip for the member, type of trip, mode of travel: major and minor, type of stay, and also characteristics of the trip like leading purpose

of the trip, month of visit, main destination, state code and number of places visited during the trip.

3.3.7 Block 6.1 is designed to collect particulars of expenditure on the latest three overnight trips covered in Block 5.1. Here, the break-up of expenditure is to be recorded in detail along with information on reimbursement/direct payment by any institution.

3.3.8 Block 6.2 is designed to collect aggregate of expenditures on all same-day trips covered in Block 5.2. Here, too, the break-up of expenditure is to be recorded in detail along with information on reimbursement/ direct payment by any institution.

3.3.9 In short, the schedule consists of the following blocks:

Block 0: Descriptive identification of sample household

Block 1 : Identification of sample household

Block 2: Particulars of field operations

Block 3 : Household characteristics

Block 4 : Demographic and other particulars for all household members

Block 5.1: Particulars of overnight trips completed by household members during last 30 days

Block 5.2: Particulars of same-day trips completed by household members during last 30 days

Block 6.1: Particulars of expenditure (in Rs.) for latest 3 trips in last 30 days covered in block 5.1

Block 6.2: Particulars of aggregate expenditure (in Rs.) for all trips in last 30 days covered in block 5.2

Block 7: Remarks by investigator/senior investigator

Block 8: Comments by superintendent/ senior superintendent

Block 9: Comments by other supervisory officer

3.3.10 Procedure of canvassing Schedule 21.1

3.3.10.1 Blocks 0, 1, 2, 3 and 4 are to be canvassed for all the sample households. Blocks 5.1 and 6.1 are to be canvassed **only** if at least one overnight trip was completed by some household member(s) during the last 30 days. Similarly, Blocks 5.2 and 6.2 are applicable **only** if at least one same-day trip was completed by some household member(s) during the last 30 days.

3.3.10.2 The detailed description of these blocks, including explanations of various terms used, as well as the procedures to be followed for making entries in the schedule, are stated in the subsequent paragraphs.

3.4. Details of the schedule

3.4.0 Block 0: Descriptive identification of sample household

4.0.0 This block is meant for recording descriptive identification particulars of a sample household and the sample village / block to which the sample household belongs. All the items in this block are self-explanatory. Items 4 and 5 are applicable for rural areas only and a dash (-) will be put against these items in urban schedules. The name of the hamlet to which the sample household belongs will be recorded against item number 5, i.e., 'hamlet name'. On the other hand, for a sample village with no hamlet group selection, a dash (-) is to be recorded against this item. Item 6 is to be recorded for urban areas only and a dash (-) would be put against this item in rural schedules. The entry against item number 8, i.e., 'name of the informant' would be the name of the principal informant, i.e., the person from whom the bulk of the information would be collected.

3.4.1 Block 1: Identification of sample household

3.4.1.0 *The identification particulars of the sample households are to be recorded against item 1, 4 to 15. The entries against items 2 and 3 are already printed in the schedule. Items 1 and 4-12 will be copied from the relevant items of Block 1 of Schedule 0.0.*

3.4.1.1 **Item 13: Sample hamlet group/sub-block number:** This item will be obtained from the heading of Block 5 of schedule 0.0.

3.4.1.2 **Item 14: Second stage stratum number:** This will be taken from the headings of Columns 8 to 12 of Block 5 of schedule 0.0. Any one of the options 1 to 5 will be entered here.

3.4.1.3 **Item 15: Sample household number:** This is the same as the order of selection of the sample household and will be copied from Columns 13 to 17 of Block 5 of schedule 0.0.

3.4.1.4 **Item 16: Serial number of informant:** The serial number (as recorded in Column 1 of Block 4) of the person who will provide the bulk of information is to be entered here. It may be noted that under normal circumstances, information is to be collected from the members of the household. However, under compelling circumstances, if a major part of the information is collected from a person who is not a member of the household, code '99' will be recorded against this item.

3.4.1.5 **Item 17: Response code:** This item will be filled in after collecting information for all items in the schedule. The entry is to be made in code on the basis of the impression formed by the investigator regarding the overall response of the informant. The codes are:

informant co-operative and capable	1
informant co-operative but not capable	2
informant busy	3
informant reluctant	4
others	9

3.4.1.6 **Item 18: Survey code:** Whether the originally selected sample household or a substitute household has been surveyed will be indicated against this item by recording code '1' if the originally selected household has been surveyed and code '2' if the substitute household has been surveyed. If neither the originally selected household nor a substitute household could be surveyed, i.e., if the sample household is a casualty, code '3' will be recorded. In case of a

casualty only the Blocks 0, 1, 2, 7, 8 and 9 are to be filled up and at the top of the front page of the schedule the word 'CASUALTY' will be written in block capitals.

3.4.1.7 Item 19: Reason for substitution of original household (code): For an originally selected sample household which could not be surveyed, the reason for not surveying the original household will be recorded against item 19 in code, irrespective of whether a substituted household could be surveyed or not. The codes are:

informant busy	1
members away from home	2
informant non-cooperative	3
others	9

This item is applicable if the entry against item 18 is either 2 or 3. Otherwise, this item is to be left blank.

3.4.2 Block 2: Particulars of field operations

3.4.2.0 The identity of the Investigator, Senior Investigator, Superintendent and Senior Superintendent associated with the schedule, date of survey/ inspection/ scrutiny of schedule, despatch, etc., will be recorded in this block against the appropriate items in the relevant columns. Besides these, from the 46th round onwards, person codes of field officials have been introduced and these codes are to be recorded against item 1(ii) (for Central sample only). If more than one day is required to canvass the schedule, the date of the first day of survey is to be recorded against item serial number 2(i). Total time taken to canvass Schedule 21.1 will be recorded in item 4. Entry in item 4 will be made in whole number and in minutes. *The time required to canvass the schedule will mean the actual time to canvass the schedule and will not include the time needed by the investigator to finalise the schedule.*

3.4.2.1 **Item 5: whether the schedule contains remarks? (yes-1, no-2):** If any remarks are recorded in Block 7, then entry should be '1' in column 3, else the entry should be '2'. If any comments are recorded in Blocks 8 or 9, then entry should be '1' in column 4, else the entry should be '2'. If any remarks/comments are recorded elsewhere in the schedule, then entry should be '1' in column 5, else the entry should be '2'.

3.4.3 Block 3: Household characteristics

3.4.3.0 Information is to be recorded in this block on certain household characteristics such as household size, principal industry, principal occupation, household type, religion, social group, number of overnight trips undertaken by the household during last 30 days and last 365 days separately, number of same-day trips undertaken by the household during last 30 days and last 365 days separately, whether any NRI visited the household during last 365 days, and if so, what was the impact of the NRI visit in influencing the household to undertake any trip, whether some portion of the house was rented out to tourists for at least one night during the last 365 days, whether any member of the household is aware of the "Incredible India" campaign by Govt. of India and if so, where the member(s) have seen/heard the campaign, and what was its impact, whether any member of the household is aware of the tourism promotional campaigns by State Tourism departments / development corporations or any other organisation and if so, where the member(s) have seen/heard the campaign, and what was its impact. There are also five questions for assessing household consumption expenditure, which is intended to be used mainly as a classificatory characteristic in studying various aspects of domestic tourism.

3.4.3.1 **Item 1: Household size:** Household size refers to the number of members listed in the household. The total number of persons normally residing together (i.e., under the same roof) and taking food from the same kitchen (including temporary stay-aways and excluding temporary visitors and guests) will be recorded against this item. This number should tally with the last serial number in column1 of Block 4, the 'demographic block'.

3.4.3.2 **Item 2: Principal industry (NIC-2004):** The procedure to determine this is stated in Chapter 1. The description of the principal household industry will be recorded in the space provided. The description of the principal industry should be recorded in as specific terms as possible based on the description given by the informant. In other words, the industry description should not be copied from the NIC booklet if the informant's description gives a clearer idea of the industrial activity, which determines the principal industry of the household. The entry cell for item 2 has been split into five parts for recording each digit separately. The appropriate five-digit industry code of the NIC-2004 will be recorded here. **For households deriving income from non-economic activities only, a dash(-) may be put against this item.**

Note: The Industry Divisions 96 and 97 of NIC-2004 will not be used for the purpose of collection of information on industry of activity. The entire range of activities described under Division 97 is outside the production boundary of the Indian System of National Accounts (ISNA) and is not considered as economic activity in the NSS survey. A part of the activities under Division 96 (viz., hunting and gathering, farming and the production of shelter), which is within the production boundary of ISNA, is also considered as economic activity in NSS surveys and the industry in case of such undifferentiated activities will be determined in the usual manner as is done now, by considering the industry in which major time is spent. Thus, these activities will get classified against the respective industries under Divisions 01-14 relating to the primary sector or Division 45 relating to construction. The rest of Division 96 is outside the production boundary of ISNA and will not be considered as economic activity for the NSS survey.

3.4.3.3 **Item 3: Principal occupation (NCO-2004):** The procedure to determine this is stated in Chapter 1. The description of the principal household occupation will be recorded in the space provided. As in the case of principal household industry, the description of the principal occupation, too, should be recorded in as specific terms as possible, based on the description given by the informant. In other words, the occupation description should not be copied from the NCO booklet if the informant's description gives a clearer idea of the principal occupation pursued by the household. The appropriate three-digit occupation code of the NCO-2004 is to be recorded in the entry cell, which has been divided into three parts for recording each digit separately. **For households deriving income from non-economic activities only, a dash(-) may be put against this item.**

3.4.3.4 **Item 4: Household type (code):** The household type code based on the means of livelihood of a household will be decided on the basis of the sources of the household's income during the 365 days preceding the date of survey. For this purpose, only the household's income (net income and not gross income) from economic activities will be considered but the incomes of servants and paying guests will not be taken into account.

3.4.3.4.1 For the **rural** areas, the selected household will be assigned the appropriate type code out of the following five different household type codes:

<i>self-employed in non-agriculture</i>	- 1,	<i>agricultural labour</i>	-2,
<i>other labour</i>	- 3,	<i>self-employed in agriculture</i>	-4,
<i>others</i>	- 9		

3.4.3.4.2 For **urban** areas, the household type codes are as follows:

self-employed	- 1,	regular wage/salary earning	- 2,
casual labour	- 3,	others	- 9

3.4.3.4.3 **Procedure for assigning household type codes in rural sector:** For a rural household, if a single source (among the five sources of income listed in the paragraph 4.3.4.1) contributes 50% or more of the household's income from economic activities during the last 365 days, it will be assigned the type code (1, 2, 3, 4 or 9) corresponding to that source.

3.4.3.4.4 For a household to be classified as 'agricultural labour' or 'self-employed in agriculture' (code 2 or 4) its income from that source must be 50% or more of its total income. If there is no such source yielding 50% or more of the household's total income, it will be given code 1, 3 or 9 according to the following procedure.

3.4.3.4.5 To be classified as self-employed in non-agriculture (code 1), the household's income from that source must be greater than its income from rural labour (all wage-paid manual labour) as well as that from all other economic activities put together (a three-way division is to be considered here).

3.4.3.4.6 A household not getting code 1, 2 or 4 will be classified as other labour (code 3) if its income from rural labour (all wage-paid manual labour) is greater than that from self-employment as well as that from other economic activities (again a three-way division). All other households will get type code 9.

3.4.3.4.7 For **urban** areas the different urban type codes correspond to four sources of household income, unlike the rural sector where five sources are considered. An urban household will be assigned the type code 1, 2, 3 or 9 corresponding to the major source of its income from economic activities during the last 365 days. A household, which does not have any income from economic activities, will get type code 9 (others).

3.4.3.5 **Item 5: Religion (code):** The religion of the household will be recorded against this item in code. If different members of the household claim to belong to different religions, the religion of the head of the household will be considered as the religion of the household.

The codes are:

Hinduism	1	Jainism	5
Islam	2	Buddhism	6
Christianity	3	Zoroastrianism	7
Sikhism	4	others	9

3.4.3.6 **Item 6: Social group (code):** Whether or not the household belongs to the Scheduled Tribes, Scheduled Castes or Other Backward Classes will be indicated against this item in code, the codes being:

Scheduled Tribe - 1, Scheduled Caste - 2, Other Backward Classes - 3, others - 9.

Those who do not come under any one of the first three social groups will be assigned code 9, which is meant to cover all other categories. In case different members belong to different social groups, the group to which the head of the household belongs will be considered as the 'social group' of the household.

3.4.3.7.1 Item 7.1: Number of overnight trips undertaken by the household during last 30 days: An overnight trip refers to a trip of duration of at least one night outside the usual environment. In case of a single night overnight trip, the night should be spread over two consecutive dates implying that it should start before and end after twelve midnight. The total number of overnight trips performed by household member(s) which ended during the last 30 days should be reported here. A single trip in which more than one member participated should be counted once only. The instructions on the criteria to be followed to determine whether a 'trip' undertaken by, say, two persons, is to be regarded as a single trip or two are to be carefully studied and followed here (ref. para 3.4.5.0.1).

Note a: If the number entered is greater than 3 (three) then there should be a remark in Block 7.

Note b: In case no overnight trip has been performed by household member(s) which ended during last 30 days, a dash (-) may be put against this item.

3.4.3.7.2 Item 7.2: Number of overnight trips undertaken by the household during last 365 days: The total number of overnight trips performed by household member(s) which ended during the last 365 days should be reported here.

Note a: If the number entered is greater than 8 (eight) then there should be a remark in Block 7.

Note b: In case no overnight trip has been performed by household member(s) which ended during last 365 days, a dash (-) may be put against this item.

3.4.3.8.1 Item 8.1: Number of same-day trips undertaken by the household during last 30 days: A same-day trip refers to a trip which does not cover even a single night. This means that the trip should start and end on the same day (0000 hrs to 2359 hrs). The total number of same-day trips performed by household member(s) during the last 30 days should be reported here. A single trip in which more than one member participated should be counted once only.

Note a: If the number entered is greater than 4 (four) then there should be a remark in Block 7.

Note b: In case no same-day trip has been performed by household member(s) during last 30 days, a dash (-) may be put against this item.

3.4.3.8.2 Item 8.2: Number of same-day trips undertaken by the household during last 365 days: The total number of same-day trips performed by household member(s) during the last 365 days should be reported here.

Note a: If the number entered is greater than 12 (twelve) then there should be a remark in B1 7.

Note b: In case no same-day trip has been performed by household member(s) during last 365 days, a dash (-) may be put against this item.

Note 1: (item 7.1 & item 8.1): Any household member(s) may perform both overnight and same-day trips during the last 30 days. In such cases, the number of such overnight trips will be considered for item 7.1 and the number of such same-day trips will be considered for item 8.1.

Note 2: (item 7.2 & item 8.2): Any household member(s) may perform both overnight and same-day trips during the last 365 days. In such cases, the number of such overnight trips will be considered for item 7.2 and the number of such same-day trips will be considered for item 8.2.

Note 3: Some examples of movements, trips or otherwise, are given in Annexure at the end of this chapter.

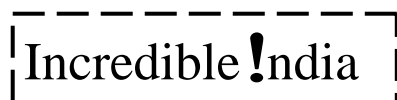
3.4.3.9.1 Item 9.1: Whether any NRI visited the household during last 365 days (yes-1, no -2): If any NRI, who is a friend or relative or acquaintance of any of the household members, visited the household during the last 365 days, then code '1' is to be recorded. It is not necessary that the NRI should have stayed overnight in the household. It will suffice if he has spent some time with the household members in the household.

3.4.3.9.2 **Item 9.2: What was the impact of the NRI visit in influencing the household to undertake trips?(code):** If any NRI visited the household in last 365 days, i.e., **if the entry in item 9.1 is '1' then this item should be canvassed.** Here, the impact of such visit on domestic tourism is to be ascertained from among the following possibilities and to be recorded in code:

- Resulted into one or more trips- 1,
- Planning to make a trip in near future- 2
- Willing to make trip but could not make it due to other constraints (like time, money etc.) -3,
- No impact- 4,
- Cannot say- 5

Note: In case different codes are reported for different members then the code for the seniormost household member as reported by the informant is to be recorded.

3.4.3.10 **Item 10: Whether some portion of the house was rented out to the tourists for at least one night during the last 365 days? (yes-1, no-2, cannot say-3):** If any part or portion of the dwelling unit of the household was rented out to tourists for at least one night during the last 365 days then code '1' is to be recorded. If no such portion was rented out in last 65 days then the code should be '2'. If the informant is not sure that the person(s) to whom some portion of the house was rented was a tourist or not then code should be '3'.



3.4.3.11.1 **Item 11.1: Whether any member of the household is aware of the "Incredible India" campaign by the Govt. of India?(yes-1, no-2):** The Ministry of Tourism, Government of India, has launched a campaign captioned 'Incredible India' (see box) through advertisement to boost up tourism in the country. If any of the household members had seen/heard this advertisement in any form of media, e.g. TV, hoardings, Internet, newspaper, etc., then code '1' is to be recorded. Otherwise code '2' should be recorded. **If '1' is recorded in item 11.1, then items 11.2 and 11.3 are to be filled in. Otherwise, the next item to be filled in will be item 12.1.**

3.4.3.11.2 **Item 11.2: where have the member(s) seen /heard the campaign?(code):** If any household member has seen/heard the 'Incredible India' advertisement then the appropriate code for this item from the following codes is to be recorded:

- | | |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| Newspaper/magazine-1, | Radio- 2, |
| TV- 3, | Internet- 4, |
| Billboard/hoarding- 5, | More than one of these- 6, |
| Others- 9 | |

3.4.3.11.3 **Item 11.3: What was the impact of seeing/hearing the campaign?(code):** If any household member had seen/heard the 'Incredible India' advertisement then its impact on domestic tourism is to be ascertained from among the following possibilities and recorded in code:

- Resulted into one or more trips- 1,
- Planning to make a trip in near future- 2
- Willing to make trip but could not make it due to other constraints (like time, money etc.) -3,
- No impact- 4,
- Cannot say- 5

Note: In case different codes are reported for different members the code for the seniormost household member as reported by the informant is to be recorded.

“Incredible India” brand

It was felt that in the international tourism market, India required a positioning statement that captured the essence of its tourism product to convey an “image” of the product to a potential customer and which would become the India “brand”. Some examples of this positioning approach are Thailand’s “Amazing Thailand” brand, Malaysia’s “Malaysia, Truly Asia” brand, The Philippines’ “Festival Islands” brand, and Egypt’s “The Land of the Pharaohs” brand. These more or less powerful positioning statements serve to effectively differentiate each of these destination countries from their competitors, and provide an effective umbrella under which the whole marketing effort may be organized and implemented on a partnership basis. To make India’s positioning statement and branding unique and unmatched in the tourism world, these had to relate to India’s great competitive strength, i.e. its ancient Vedic Civilization with a cultural heritage that continues to live in a largely unchanging and vibrant manner even today, especially in rural areas.

2. In the domestic market, where the focus of interest is rural or village tourism, a different positioning statement was required. This had to be related to the concept of “returning to or rediscovering ones roots” in order to escape the complexities and pressures of India’s cities for the calm green of the rural countryside and the simplicity of the traditional village. The development of a powerful positioning image and brand position for India in its international and domestic markets required the industry “buy in” for it to be successful.

3. With the objective of establishing a unique and single identity, the Ministry of Tourism, Government of India, for the first time undertook a Centralized Media Campaign in 2002-03 in the overseas markets under the brand “Incredible India”. The efforts of the campaign helped in establishing the brand and aroused the curiosity on India as a desirable tourist destination. Focussed and targeted campaigns in the subsequent years resulted in significant growths in foreign tourist arrivals and foreign exchange earnings through tourism. The media campaigns over the years under the brand “Incredible India” have increased the level of interest in India and changed the mindset of foreign tourists. It has now established India as one of the most preferred destinations in the world.

4. Domestic tourism, which is the backbone of India’s tourism industry, has vast potential for phenomenal growth. To boost the domestic travel market and to tap the middle class Indian segment with high disposable income, the Ministry of Tourism has launched a series of “Incredible India” campaigns country-wide, in the electronic and print media. The themes covered under the Domestic Media Campaigns are as follows

- *Pilgrimage*
- *150 Years of India’s Freedom Struggle*
- *2550th Anniversary of Mahaparinirvana of Lord Buddha*
- *Jammu & Kashmir*
- *North East*
- *Adventure and Wildlife*
- *Cultural Heritage and World Heritage Sites of India*
- *Yoga and Wellness*
- *Awareness Campaigns on Garbage and Graffiti at the monuments*
- *Rural Tourism*

Source: Ministry of Tourism

3.4.3.12.1 Item 12.1: whether any member of the household is aware of the tourism promotional campaigns by state tourism departments / development corporations or any other organization? (yes-1, no-2): Various state tourism departments or state tourism development corporation or some other organization through advertisement also attempt to increase tourism in their respective state or in country as a whole. If any of the household members had seen/heard such advertisement in any form of media, e.g. TV, hoardings, Internet, newspaper, etc., then code ‘1’ is to be recorded. Otherwise code ‘2’ should be recorded. If ‘1’ is

recorded in item 12.1, then items 12.2 and 12.3 are to be filled in. Otherwise, the next item to be filled in will be item 13.

3.4.3.12.2 Item 12.2: where have the member(s) seen /heard the campaign?(code): If any household member has seen/heard such advertisement then the appropriate code for this item from the following codes is to be recorded:

Newspaper/magazine-1,	Radio- 2,
TV- 3,	Internet- 4,
Billboard/hoarding- 5,	More than one of these- 6,
Others- 9	

3.4.3.12.3 Item 12.3: What was the impact of seeing/hearing the campaign?(code): If any household member had seen/heard such advertisement then its impact on domestic tourism is to be ascertained from among the following possibilities and recorded in code:

- Resulted into one or more trips- 1,
- Planning to make a trip in near future- 2
- Willing to make trip but could not make it due to other constraints (like time, money etc.) -3,
- No impact- 4,
- Cannot say- 5

Note: In case different codes are reported for different members the code for the seniormost household member as reported by the informant is to be recorded.

The step-by-step procedure for identifying a movement, which qualifies as a *trip* for a household member is stated below:

Step 1: The movement should be outside the *usual place of residence* of the individual and it should not be in connection with activities, which form part of his regular routine of life.

Step 2: The movement should be a round movement. It means the movement should start from the UPR and end at the UPR.

Step 3: The movement should be completed within the reference period and the duration of the movement should not be more than six months irrespective of when the movement started.

Step 4: The movement should **not** be for any of the following purposes:

- Arriving at a place to take up an occupation or employment at that place.
For example, farm labourers from Bihar and Eastern U.P. going to Punjab every year.
- Arriving at a place to establish more or less permanent residence in that place.
For example, movements of retirees staying in rental flat in New Delhi moving out to stay in their own flat in Faridabad after retirement.
- Arriving at a place to work temporarily (less than six months) in institutions within the country.
For example, Government servants on deputation to different stations for short periods.
- Arriving at a place on migration within the country.
For example, going to Surat from Howrah as migrant.

Step 5: The movement should **not** be within the regular routine of life of the individual.

Step 6: The movement should **not** be (a) within the same village in rural areas or (b) within the same town in urban areas, where the individual resides.

3.4.3.13 **Items 13 to 18: household consumer expenditure during last 30 days:** These items have been introduced for deriving monthly per capita consumer expenditure. The purpose is to use this information as a classificatory characteristic for studying various aspects of domestic tourism. From the instructions given in the next few paragraphs, it will be noticed that the procedure does not conflict with the usual procedure followed in canvassing Schedule 1.0.

3.4.3.14 The household consumer expenditure during last 30 days is to be ascertained, through direct questions, out of the following five sources:

- 1) purchase,
- 2) home-produced stock,
- 3) receipt in exchange of goods and services,
- 4) gifts and loans
- 5) free collection.

These will be recorded in whole number in rupees against items 13 to 17. The total of items 13 to 17 will be recorded against item 18.

3.4.3.15 **item 13: purchase:** *How much did the household spend on purchases during the last 30 days?*

The following points are to be kept in mind:

- Here 'purchase' includes not only purchases of goods but also cash payments for 'purchase' of services such as transport, education, medical, rent, electricity and telephone.
- For food, pan, tobacco, intoxicants, fuel, clothing and footwear, items gifted to non-household members (except cooked meals) are to be excluded and excess purchases (of foodgrains, etc.) not consumed during the reference period are also to be excluded. Consumption during the last 30 days out of purchases made more than 30 days ago is to be added.
- Instalment payments for household durables are to be included, as well as repairs and construction expenditure of household durables, and expenditure on repair and maintenance of dwelling unit.
- Any expenditure incurred towards purchase of immovable property like land, building, etc. will be excluded.
- Also, for households having an enterprise, any amount spent for enterprise purposes will be excluded; for households owning livestock, any amount spent on food consumed by livestock will be excluded; for cultivator households, any farm expenditure will be excluded.

For items 14 to 17, questions of the following kind may be put to the informants:

3.4.3.16 **Item 14: home-produced stock:** Did the household members use any goods grown/produced by the household for their own consumption during the last 30 days? If so, how much? What was the estimated value of such goods consumed at ex farm/factory price? The goods could be cereals, pulses, vegetables, milk, firewood & chips, cow dung, footwear, clothes, etc.

3.4.3.17 **item 15: receipts in exchange of goods and services:** Did the household, during the last 30 days, receive any goods and services in return for services provided (or goods bartered)

by household members? What is the estimated value of these goods and services at local retail prices? For wage/salaried households, such items could be perquisites like free electricity, free telephone services, free medical services, etc. Agricultural labourers might receive payments in foodgrains, vegetables, meals, etc. for their labour from cultivators. A village barber might receive his payment in foodgrains, vegetables, clothing, etc. These are to be considered while recording information against this item.

3.4.3.18 **item 16: gifts and loans:** Were any items of the following categories – food, pan, tobacco, intoxicants, fuel, clothing and footwear – borrowed for household consumption or received as gifts during the last 30 days? What is the estimated value of these goods at local retail prices? Note that goods obtained as gift or loan other than items of these categories are not to be considered here. For example, books or watches or cosmetics borrowed or received as gift from other households are not to be considered.

3.4.3.19 **item 17: free collection:** Was any item obtained by the household through free collection during the last 30 days for its consumption? What is the estimated value of these items at local retail prices? Normally, such items could include firewood, cow dung, vegetables, honey or other forest products.

3.4.3.20 **Item 18: total:** This will be obtained as the sum of items 14 to 18.

Note: The detailed schedule on consumer expenditure (Schedule 1.0), which is usually canvassed each year, is not being canvassed in this round.

3.4.4 Block 4: Demographic and other particulars for all household members

3.4.4.0 In this block, demographic particulars (viz., relation to head, sex, age, marital status), education level, usual principal activity status, NIC, NCO, number of overnight and same-day trips, etc. will be recorded using one line for each member of the household.

3.4.4.1 **Column 1: Sl. No. :** A running serial number will be given in this column for each member of the sample household starting with the head of the household. The other members will be listed in the usual fashion with the spouse of the head and their children following and the non-relatives at the end. The last serial number should be equal to item1 of Block 3.

3.4.4.2 **Column 2: Name of member:** The names of all the members will be written clearly in this column in the order in which they are listed. Names may be shortened to accommodate them in the given space.

3.4.4.3 **Column 3: Relation to head (code):** The relationship of each of the members to the head of the household will be recorded in code against the members listed as follows:

Relation to head (codes):

Self	... 1
spouse of head	... 2
married child	... 3
spouse of married child	... 4
unmarried child	... 5
grandchild	... 6
father/mother/father-in-law/mother-in-law	... 7
brother/sister/brother-in-law/sister-in-law/other relatives	... 8
servant/employee/other non-relative	...9

3.4.4.4 **Column 4: Sex:** The sex of each member is to be recorded in code: 1 for male and 2 for female.

3.4.4.5 **Column 5: Age:** The age in completed years of all the members listed will be ascertained and recorded in column (5). For infants below one year of age, '0' will be entered in column (5).

3.4.4.6. **Column 6: Marital status (code):** The marital status of each member will be recorded in this Column . The codes are:

never married - 1, currently married - 2, widowed - 3, divorced/separated - 4.

3.4.4.7 **Column 7: Education level (code):** Education level refers to the highest level successfully completed. For example, if a person has failed in his B. A. examination, then his level will be merely 'higher secondary'. The education level of each member is to be ascertained carefully before making entry here. A person is considered *literate* if he/she can read and write a simple message in any language with understanding. It will be essential to probe in detail whenever it is felt that the educational achievement of the person is not sufficient to accept the response, particularly if the person has not completed the primary level of school education.

The codes to be given for various levels are as follows :

not literate	...01
literate without any schooling:	...02
literate without formal schooling:	
<i>through NFEC/AIEP</i>	...03
<i>through TLC/AEC</i>	...04
<i>others</i>	...05
literate with formal schooling including EGS:	
<i>below primary</i>	...06
<i>primary</i>	...07
<i>middle</i>	...08
<i>secondary</i>	...10
<i>higher /senior secondary</i>	...11
<i>diploma /certificate course</i>	...12
<i>graduate</i>	...13
<i>post graduate and above</i>	...14

A person who can both read and write a simple message with understanding in at least one language is to be considered literate. Those who are not able to do so, are to be considered not literate and would be assigned code 01. Those who acquired this skill without attending any type of schooling would be assigned code 02. Some persons achieve literacy by attending Non-formal Education Courses (NFEC) or Alternative Innovative Education Programme (AIEP). Such persons will be given code 03. Persons, who have become literate through attending Total Literacy Campaign (TLC) or Adult Education Centres (AEC) are to be given code 04. Persons, who are literate through means other than formal schooling and not under above two categories, would be given code 05. Those, who are, by definition, literate through formal schooling, including primary schools created under Education Guarantee Scheme (EGS) but who are yet to pass primary standard examination, would be assigned code 06. Similarly codes 07, 08, and 10 to 14 will be assigned to those who have passed the appropriate levels. The criterion for deciding primary, middle, secondary, etc. levels will be that followed in the concerned states/union territories. Persons who have attained proficiency in Oriental languages (e.g., Sanskrit, Persian, etc.) through formal but not through the general type of education will be classified appropriately at the equivalent level of general education standard. For those who have completed some diploma or certificate course in general or technical education, which is equivalent to below graduation level, code 12 will be assigned. Code 13 will be recorded for those who have obtained degree or diploma or certificate in general or technical education, which is equivalent to graduation level. Similarly, code 14 will be assigned to those who have

obtained degree or diploma or certificate in general or technical education, which is equivalent to post-graduation level and above.

3.4.4.8 Column 8: Usual principal activity status (code): The usual principal activity status code of the member is to be recorded here. The codes are as follows:

worked in h.h. enterprise (self-employed):

own account worker -11 ,

employer -12,

worked as helper in h.h. enterprise (unpaid family worker) -21,

worked as regular salaried/ wage employee -31,

worked as casual wage labour:

in public works -41,

worked as casual wage labour:

in other types of work -51,

did not work but was seeking and/or available for work -81,

attended educational institution -91,

attended domestic duties only -92,

attended domestic duties and was also engaged in free collection of goods (vegetables, roots, firewood, cattle feed, etc.), sewing, tailoring, weaving, etc. for household use -93,

rentiers, pensioners , remittance recipients, etc -94,

not able to work due to disability -95,

others (including begging, prostitution, etc.) -97.

3.4.4.9 Column 9: NIC-2004 (code) - for employed: If the member is employed (i.e. *usual principal activity status* code is any one of 11 to 51 in Column 8) then his/her 2-digit NIC code according to NIC-2004 is to be recorded. If the member is engaged in non-economic activities, then a dash(-) may be put against this item.

Note: The Industry Divisions 96 and 97 of NIC-2004 will not be used for the purpose of collection of information on industry of activity. The entire range of activities described under Division 97 is outside the production boundary of the Indian System of National Accounts (ISNA) and is not considered as economic activity in the NSS survey. A part of the activities under Division 96 (viz., hunting and gathering, farming and the production of shelter), which is within the production boundary of ISNA, is also considered as economic activity in NSS surveys and the industry in case of such undifferentiated activities will be determined in the usual manner as is done now, by considering the industry in which major time is spent. Thus, these activities will get classified against the respective industries under Divisions 01-14 relating to the primary sector or Division 45 relating to construction. The rest of Division 96 is outside the production boundary of ISNA and will not be considered as economic activity for the NSS survey.

3.4.4.10 Column 10: NCO- 2004 (1 digit level) – for employed: If the member is employed (i.e. *usual principal activity status* code is any one of 11 to 51 in Column 8) then his/her NCO according to NCO-2004 is to be recorded at 1-digit level.

The codes are

Legislators, senior officials and managers	-1	Skilled agricultural and fishery workers	-6
Professionals	-2	Craft and related trades workers	-7
Associate professionals	-3	Plant and machine operators and assemblers	-8
Clerks	-4	Elementary occupations	-9
Service workers and shop & market sales workers	-5		

If the member is engaged in non-economic activities, then a dash (-) may be put against this item.

3.4.4.11 Column 11: Number of overnight trips made by the member during last 365 days; Number of overnight trips made by the member which ended in the last 365 days including those ending in the last 30 days is to be recorded here. **In case no overnight trip ending in the last 365 days has been performed by the member, a dash (-) may be put against this item.**

Note: The sum total of overnight trips for all the members in Column 11 should be greater than or equal to the entry in item 7.2 of Block 3.

3.4.4.12 Column 12: Number of overnight trips made by the member during last 30 days; Number of overnight trips made by the member which ended in the last 30 days is to be recorded. **In case no overnight trip ending in the last 30 days has been performed by the member, a dash (-) may be put against this item.** If there is positive entry in column 12 there must be corresponding positive entry in column 11 also and the figure in column 11 should be greater than or equal to the corresponding figure in Column 12 of this block.

Note: The sum total of overnight trips for all the members in Column 12 should be greater than or equal to the entry in item 7.1 of Block 3.

A DOMESTIC TOURIST is a domestic visitor who spent at least one night in a trip during the last 365 days. This means that a domestic tourist must have undertaken at least one overnight trip during last 365 days. In this schedule they are considered as OVERNIGHT VISITORS.

A SAME-DAY VISITOR is a domestic visitor who has undertaken at least one same-day trip (i.e. a trip on which not even one night was spent) during the last 365 days.

Note: A household member may undertake same-day trip(s) as well as overnight trip(s) during the last 365 days. Such a member should be considered an overnight visitor as well as a same-day visitor. His number of overnight trips will be recorded in columns 11 & 12 of Block 4 while the number of same-day trips will be recorded in columns 13 & 14 of the same block.

3.4.4.13 Column 13: Number of same-day trips made by the member during last 365 days; Number of same-day trips made by the member in the last 365 days including the last 30 days is to be recorded here. **In case no same-day trip has been performed by the member during last 365 days, a dash (-) may be put against this item.**

Note: The sum total of same-day trips for all the members in Column 13 should be greater than or equal to the entry in item 8.2 of Block 3.

3.4.4.14 **Column 14: Number of same-day trips made by the member during last 30 days;** Number of same-day trips made by the member in the last 30 days is to be recorded. **In case no same-day trip has been performed by the member during last 30 days, a dash (-) may be put against this item.** If there is positive entry in column 14 there must be corresponding positive entry in column 13 also and the figure should be greater than or equal to the corresponding figure in Column 14 of this block.

Note: The sum total of same-day trips for all the members in Column 14 should be greater than or equal to the entry in item 8.1 of Block 3.

3.4.5 Block 5.1: Particulars of overnight trips completed by household members during last 30 days

3.4.5.0 In this block all particulars of the overnight trips ended in the last 30 days are to be recorded.

3.4.5.0.1 A trip is uniquely specified by its set of destinations, persons participating, and starting and ending dates. In some cases trips may be reported for which the set of destinations differs slightly from person to person (among those who undertook the trip). For example, it may happen that all members of a household visit New Delhi, but only some go from New Delhi to Agra to see the Taj Mahal. Even in such cases, if the persons are together for most of the time (duration of the trip), they will be considered to be on the same trip. (Here “being together” means being in the same town or village, though, obviously, one person may spend the day in a hotel while others visit a museum or temple, or attend a conference.) But if two members of a household spent most of the time away from each other during the period since leaving their residence to returning to their residence, then they will be considered to have been on two different trips even though their starting and returning dates may be the same.

Example: A young man and his mother residing in Kolkata (their UPR) go to their relatives’ residence in Delhi. Within two days, the young man and a cousin go on a trek to Kedarnath and Badrinath. They return after two weeks. The mother stays in Delhi and returns to Kolkata with her son three days after his return from the trek. Here the mother and son will be considered to have made two separate trips because they have not been together for the major part of the period between leaving their UPR and returning.

Note: For a particular trip, only one entry is to be made in columns 1-2 & 12-17 (corresponding to the first row for that trip) whereas columns 3-11 are to be recorded for all the members in that trip.

3.4.5.1 **Column 1: Sl. no. of trip:** A running serial number will be given in this column for each overnight trip undertaken by any of the household members during last 30 days. **Trips should be serialised commencing from the latest completed trip. Thus the trip completed last is to be given serial number 1, the trip completed just before trip 1 is to be given serial number 2 and so on.**

3.4.5.2 **Column 2: No. of household members in the trip:** The total number of household members who participated in the trip is to be recorded here.

3.4.5.3 Column 3: Sl. no. of hh member who was in that trip (as in column 1, Block 4): Here the serial number of each household member who took part in that trip is to be recorded. This number is to be recorded as in Block 4. Different rows are to be used for different members.

3.4.5.4 Column 4: age (as in column 5, Block 4): Here the age of each household member who took part in the trip is to be recorded. This age is to be recorded as in column 5, Block 4. Different rows are to be used for different members.

3.4.5.5 Column 5: Purpose of the trip for the member (code): In a particular trip different members might have undertaken the trip because of different purposes. Suppose the household member gives the purpose of a trip as ‘business’. To ascertain the purpose, the household member may be asked – “Would you have undertaken the trip if no business was needed to be done?” The purpose would be taken as ‘business’ only if the answer is ‘no’. In this way the purpose of each individual member who undertook the trip is to be recorded here.

The codes are -

Business	-1	Education & training	-5
Holidaying, leisure and recreation	-2	Health & medical	-6
Social (including visiting friends and relatives, attending marriages, etc.)	-3	Shopping	-7
Pilgrimage & religious activities	-4	Others	-9

Note: There may be exceptional situations where no one purpose can be identified as the unique purpose. In such a case, the purpose will be identified as that purpose which the informant considers to be the most important for the trip member.

3.4.5.5.1 Business: This category includes trips of employees of Government, public or private organisations or of self-employed people, trips for installation of equipment, inspection, purchase and sale for enterprise; for attending conferences, congresses, trade fairs and exhibitions; for delivering lectures or concerts; for participation in professional sport activities, etc.

For example: Official tours of Govt. officials posted outside Delhi to attend occasional official meetings at Delhi

3.4.5.5.2 Holidaying, leisure and recreation: This category includes sightseeing, attending sporting and cultural events, non-professional active sports, adventure sports, recreational activities, cultural activities, holidays at beaches and hill stations, summer camps, dining out, visiting spas and other establishments specialized in well-being, fitness except in the context of a medical treatment (in which case the purpose would be health & medical), etc.

3.4.5.5.3 Social: This category includes visiting friends and relatives, attending marriages/ any other family events/ other social functions, visiting home towns, visits to arrange short-term caring for the baby, sick or old; etc.

3.4.5.5.4 Pilgrimage & religious activities: This category includes attending various religious meetings and events, and undertaking pilgrimages to different places of worship or holy places.

3.4.5.5.5 Education and training: This category includes trips to join short-term courses (less than six months) following particular programs of study, education and research programming, acquiring specific skills through formal on-the-job training including paid study, etc.

For example, the trip of a professional academician (e.g. college lecturer/school teacher) for acquiring a certain academic qualification would come under this category. However, if his trip primarily involves delivering academic lectures then the purpose of his trip should be reported not as *education and training* but as *business*.

3.4.5.5.6 **Health and Medical:** This category includes trips to spa, fitness and health resorts, treatments and cures, ayurvedic and other health resorts of traditional medicines, etc., for getting short-term (less than six months) medical treatment.

3.4.5.5.7 **Shopping:** This category includes purchasing of consumer goods for own personal use or as gifts but not for resale or for use in a future productive process (in which case the purpose would be *business*).

For example, in many places in our country people visit some nearby city/town or market place primarily for the purpose of purchasing consumer goods during festivals like Puja, Diwali, Eid, Christmas, etc. or during social functions like marriages, birthdays, etc., in their households. For such trips the purpose should be taken as *shopping*. But if a shopkeeper undertakes a trip to a city/town to make wholesale purchase for retail selling then the purpose of his trip would be *business* and not shopping.

3.4.5.5.8 **Others:** This category includes purposes which are not indicated elsewhere.

For example, making a trip to render some social service, such as attending a blood donation camp to donate blood, will come under this category.

3.4.5.6 **Column 6: Type of trip (code):** A package is a combination of transport and any one or more chargeable travel services (e.g., accommodation, meals/food, entertainment and/or sightseeing, etc.) and sold by tour operators through travel agencies or directly to final consumers as a single product for a single price. The components of a package tour might be pre-established or tailor-made, in which case, the visitor chooses a combination of services he/she wishes to acquire from a pre-established list of such services. ***If such a package is availed of for a major part of time in a trip, such a trip should be considered as a package trip.*** Note that, travelling by say, a hired video coach, for sightseeing where expenditure on food and entry tickets to sightseeing spots are borne separately by the visitors should **not** be taken as a package. If the expenditure on transport and one or more chargeable travel services availed for some time during the trip does not cover the whole trip but covers only a minor time of the duration of the trip then such a trip should not be considered as package trip although the trip has a package component. Therefore, a trip which is not a package trip may have both package and non-package components. Similarly, a package trip may also contain *non-package* component in addition to its *package* component, e.g., a visitor may avail himself of accommodation and other services in the package through some tour operator but make some special sight-seeing arrangements in some places of visit in the trip on his own. If a trip is a *package* trip then code '1' should be given, otherwise code '2' should be recorded. It may be noted here that a package trip must have a package component but not *vice versa*.

3.4.5.7 **Mode of travel (code):** *Mode of travel* refers to means of transport used by visitor(s) to travel in a trip. The travel relevant here is the travelling done to cover the distances to the destinations and not joyrides or movement for adventure, as in skiing or boating for pleasure, or walking inside a museum, fort or maze. Visitor(s) may be using one or more means of transport in a trip. The admissible codes are: *on foot-01, bus-02, train(railways)-03, ship/boat-04, air-05, own transport: bicycle-06, two-wheeler-07, rickshaw-08, auto rickshaw-10, car/jeep-11,*

tractor/truck-12, animal driven transport-13, transport equipment rental (hired transport): bicycle-14, two-wheeler-15, rickshaw-16, auto rickshaw-17, car/jeep-18, tractor/truck-20, animal driven transport-21, others -29

3.4.5.7.1 **On foot:** This means that the movement is on foot and not supported by any mechanised (motorised or non-motorised) system. However movement on foot using crutch or stick is included in this category.

3.4.5.7.2 **Bus:** This category includes travel by any type of bus like public, private, chartered, luxury, Volvo, etc. Trams or trolley-buses are included in this category. Vans, trekkers, maxis and other vehicles used for public transportation or transportation of a large number of persons should also be included in this category.

3.4.5.7.3 **Train(railways):** This category includes travel by rail (surface/underground), toy train, etc. as means of transport.

3.4.5.7.4 **Ship/boat:** This category includes travel by passenger line and ferry, cruise ship, yacht and other modes of water transport necessary for movement in a trip.

3.4.5.7.5 **Air:** This category includes travel by flights (scheduled or chartered or private), helicopter and other modes of air transport necessary for movement in a trip.

Own transport:

3.4.5.7.6 **Bicycle:** This category includes travel by non-motorised bicycle which is owned. If the bicycle is motorised then the code should be '07' (own).

3.4.5.7.7 **Two-wheeler:** This category includes travel by motorized two-wheeler which is owned. If the two-wheeler is hired then the code should be '15'.

3.4.5.7.8 **Rickshaw:** This category includes travel by rickshaw or non-motorised three-wheeler like cycle van, which is owned.

3.4.5.7.9 **Auto rickshaw:** This category includes travel by auto rickshaw or motorized three-wheeler, which is owned.

3.4.5.7.10 **Car/jeep:** This category includes travel by own car/jeep.

3.4.5.7.11 **Tractor/truck:** This category includes travel by own tractor/truck. Though tractor and truck are primarily used for cultivation, transportation of commodities etc, these can be used as means of transport also.

3.4.5.7.12 **Animal driven transport:** This category includes travel by horse-cart, bullock-cart, camel-cart etc, which is owned and not hired. This type of transport equipment is a mechanical device which is drawn by animal. This category excludes travel on horse-back, pony-back etc, for which the code should be '29', i.e. 'others'.

Note: For each of the above modes of travel under 'own transport', the owner must be a member of the household who may or may not be a visitor. However, if the vehicle is borrowed rental-free from a non-household member, it should be treated as owned.

Transport equipment rental (hired transport):

3.4.5.7.13 **Transport equipment rental (hired transport):** This includes travel on hired road transport by *bicycle* (code-14), *two-wheeler* (code-15), *rickshaw* (code-16), *auto rickshaw* (code-17), *car/jeep* including taxi (code-18), *tractor/truck* (code-20), *animal driven transport* (code-21) such as horse-carts (*ekkas*), bullock-carts, camel-carts, etc. This category excludes travel on horse-back, pony-back etc, for which the code should be '29', i.e. 'others'. The transport equipment must be hired with or without driver/helper and should not be public transport or owned by a household member (see also Note under the preceding paragraph). It may be shared with any other person (s) who is/are not member(s) of the trip.

Others:

3.4.5.7.14 **Others:** This category includes means of transport which are not indicated elsewhere (paragraphs 3.4.5.12.1 to 3.4.5.12.13 above), such as cable car, transport by animals like horse-back, pony-back, transport by humans like palanquin (*palki*), *doli* carriages, *dandi*, etc.

3.4.5.7.15 **Column 7: Major (maximum distance traveled):** The means of transport by which maximum distance was traveled will be treated as 'major' *mode of travel* for that trip and the corresponding code will be recorded against this item. In case more than one such mode was there [e.g. train, air] for which equal distance was traveled then entry to be recorded for that means which was more expensive.

3.4.5.7.16 **Column 8: Minor (2nd maximum distance traveled):** The means of transport by which second maximum distance was traveled will be treated as 'minor' *mode of travel* for that trip and the corresponding code will be recorded against this item.

3.4.5.8 **Type of stay (code):** The *type of stay* refers to the accommodation used for stay by visitor(s) in a trip. Accommodation refers to the space, usually for paid lodging, where the visitor(s) spent some considerable time for spending night, taking rest, spending some leisure time, refreshing oneself, etc. during the trip. The admissible codes are: hotel-1, private guest house-2, Govt. guest house -3, dharamshala-4, rented house-5, friends & relatives-6, others including carriages / coaches -9.

3.4.5.8.1 **Hotel:** A hotel is an establishment that provides paid lodging, usually on a short-term basis. At times, hotels provide a number of additional guest services such as a restaurant, a swimming pool, childcare, etc. Operationally, if the respondent claims that he/she stayed in a hotel, code '1' should be recorded against this item.

3.4.5.8.2 **Private guest house:** These are the accommodation units owned and managed by private entrepreneurs/ bodies. Examples are Youth Hostels run by YMCA, YWCA, Guest Houses run by NGOs, Holiday Homes of banks and insurance companies managed by their recreation clubs, etc.

3.4.5.8.3 **Govt. guest house:** These are the accommodation units owned and managed by Central or State Governments/ local bodies. Examples are circuit houses, Panchayat Bhavans, different state guest houses like Andhra Bhavan, Maharashtra Bhavan, etc. in Delhi, Nizam Palace in Kolkata, Government Youth Hostels, etc.

3.4.5.8.4 ***Dharamshala:*** A *Dharamshala* is a rest house usually for accommodation of visitors during their pilgrimage. It is generally a dormitory for pilgrims located near religious places. Accommodation may be free or at some charge.

3.4.5.8.5 ***Rented house:*** This type of accommodation unit is any part or whole of any residential unit which is rented to tourists and is owned solely or jointly by an individual or a group of individuals.

3.4.5.8.6 ***Friends & relatives:*** If the household members during a trip stayed in their friends' or relatives' house, the code should be '6' against this item.

3.4.5.8.7 ***Others including carriages/ coaches:*** All other types of accommodation except those mentioned in paragraphs 3.4.5.8.1 to 3.4.5.8.6 above will come under this item. Examples are carriages/coaches, tents, second/vacation homes, etc. For each household, there is a dwelling that is considered as its primary home and whose location defines the usual place of residence for the members of this household. All other dwellings for this household are to be considered as second/vacation homes.

3.4.5.9 ***Column 9: Major (max. no. of nights spent):*** The place where the highest number of nights was spent will be treated as 'major' type of stay and the corresponding code will be recorded in this column. In case more than one such place was there (e.g. hotel, *Dharmashala*) where same no. of nights was spent then entry to be recorded for that type which was more expensive.

3.4.5.10 ***Column 10: Minor (2nd max. no. of nights spent):*** The place where second highest number of nights was spent will be treated as 'minor' type of stay and the corresponding code will be recorded in this column.

3.4.5.11 ***Column 11: No. of nights spent outside usual place of residence (including journey):*** The number of nights spent by the visitor outside his/her usual place of residence from starting of the trip to the completion of the trip, including the nights spent in transit, is to be recorded here.

3.4.5.12 ***Column 12: Leading purpose for all the members performing the trip (code):*** Leading purpose of trip as a whole is that purpose without which none of the members in that trip would have undertaken the trip. This must be one of the purposes mentioned in Column 5 for a particular trip. **Clearly, the leading purpose of a trip will be the same for all the members who undertook that trip.** There may be exceptional situations where no one purpose can be identified as the leading purpose. For example, there could be two or more purposes, say, pilgrimage and health, recorded for different trip members. In such a case, the leading purpose will be identified as that purpose which the informant considers to be the most important for different trip members. The code structure is the same as for Column 5.

Illustration 1: In a household, there were two trips in the last 30 days. In trip 1, two members, with the intention of sight-seeing, accompanied their son, aged 18, to a nearby town where he was to appear for a competitive examination. The parents of the boy were aged 48 and 40 respectively. In trip 2, two members of age 74 and 48 went on a pilgrimage. The entries for Columns (1) to (12) should be filled in as follows-

sl. no. of trip	no. of hh members in the trip	sl. no. of hh member who was in that trip (as in Col 1, block 4)	age (as in Col 5, block 4)	purpose of the trip for the member (code)	type of trip (code)	mode of travel (code)		type of stay (code)		no. of nights spent outside usual place of residence (including journey)	leading purpose* for all the members performing the trip (code)
						major (max. distance traveled)	minor (2 nd max. distance traveled)	major (max. no. of nights spent)	minor (2 nd max. no. of nights spent)		
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)	(10)	(11)	(12)
1	3	03	48	2	1	02	03	2		1	5
		04	40	2	1	02	03	2		1	
		06	18	5	1	02	03	2		1	
2	2	01	74	4	2	03	17	4		4	4
		03	48	4	2	03	17	3		4	

3.4.5.13 Column 13: Starting month (code): The month of starting the trip is to be recorded against this item. It may sometimes happen that many members of a household are traveling together on a trip. In some cases, one member (or more) among those who go on a trip may start later than the rest, or return earlier, due to other engagements.

(a) If both the starting date and the returning date for this member are different from that of the rest of the members, then this member will be considered to have undertaken a different trip from the rest.

(b) If at least one of the two dates – the starting date (D_s) and the returning date (D_r) – is the same for this member as for the rest of the members, and the other date, too, does not differ from that of the rest of the members by more than 3 days, then such a member may be considered to have gone on the same trip as the rest of the members.

In these cases the earliest starting date will be considered for determining the starting month.

The applicable codes are-

January	-01,	Februray	-02,	March	-03,
April	-04,	May	-05,	June	-06,
July	-07,	August	-08,	September	-09,
October	-10,	November	-11,	December	-12

3.4.5.14 Column 14: Ending month (code): The month of completing the trip is to be recorded against this item. In a similar situation of a multiple-member trip as that mentioned in the previous paragraph, the latest ending date will be considered for determining the ending month. The applicable codes are – January-01, Februray-02, March-03, April-04, May-05, June-06, July-07, August-08, September-09, October-10, November-11, December-12.

3.4.5.15 Column 15: Main destination (code): If visiting a certain place is central to the decision to undertake the trip, then that place will be termed the *main destination* of the trip. However, if no such place can be identified by the informant, the main destination is to be taken as the place where the members spent most of their time during the trip. If the visitors spent the same amount of time in two or more places during the trip, then the main destination is that one among these places which is the farthest from the usual place residence of the visitor.

Obviously, the main destination of a trip will be the same for all the members who undertook that trip. The codes are -

- destination within the district: 1,
- destination outside the district but within the State: 2,
- destination outside the State but within the country: 3

3.4.5.16 Column 16: If code '3' in column 15 then State code: If the main destination of a particular trip is outside the State of origin (i.e. the State in which the household is located) then the State of the main destination is to be recorded. Once the main destination is uniquely identified, its State code is to be entered in this column. The code structure is as follows-

Andhra Pradesh	....28	Karnataka	....29	Tamil Nadu	....33
Arunachal Pradesh	....12	Kerala	....32	Tripura	....16
Assam	....18	Madhya Pradesh	....23	Uttaranchal	....05
Bihar	....10	Maharashtra	....27	Uttar Pradesh	....09
Chhattisgarh	....22	Manipur	....14	West Bengal	....19
Delhi	....07	Meghalaya	....17	A & N Islands	....35
Goa	....30	Mizoram	....15	Chandigarh	....04
Gujarat	....24	Nagaland	....13	Dadra & Nagar Haveli	....26
Haryana	....06	Orissa	....21	Daman & Diu	....25
Himachal Pradesh	....02	Punjab	....03	Lakshadweep	....31
Jammu & Kashmir	....01	Rajasthan	....08	Pondicherry	....34
Jharkhand	....20	Sikkim	....11		

3.4.5.17 Column 17: No. of places visited during the trip: The term **visit** refers to the stay (overnight or same-day) in a place visited during a trip. The stay need not be overnight to qualify as a visit. Nevertheless, the notion of stay supposes that there is a stop for a purpose of trip. Entering a geographical area without stopping there for a purpose or stopping for taking food during transit is not to be considered as a visit to that place. The '*main destination*' must also be counted as a place of visit. If two or more places are reported to have been visited which are in the same town or in the same village, they should be counted once only. The total number of all places visited (including the main destination) in the trip is to be recorded here. Thus, the entry should be 1 or more.

For example, a trip covered New Delhi, Agra and Mathura. The main destination was Agra. Then the entry in column 17 should be 3 (New Delhi, Agra and Mathura), though several sites in New Delhi or Agra like Jantar Mantar and India Gate in New Delhi and Taj Mahal and Agra Fort in Agra were visited by trip members.

3.4.6 Block 5.2: Particulars of same-day trips completed during last 30 days by household members

3.4.6.0 In this block all particulars of the same-day trips completed in the last 30 days are to be recorded. ***For a particular same-day trip, only one entry is to be made in columns 1-2 & 10-14 whereas columns 3-9 are to be recorded for all the members in that trip.***

3.4.6.1 **Column 1: Sl. no. of trip:** A running serial number will be given in this column for each same-day trip undertaken by any of the household members during last 30 days. As in Block 5.1, trips should be serialised commencing from the latest completed trip.

3.4.6.2 **Column 2: No. of hh members in the trip:** Total number of household members who participated in the trip is to be recorded here.

3.4.6.3 **Column 3: Sl. no. of hh member who was in that trip (as in column 1, Block 4):** Similar to that in Block 5.1.

3.4.6.4 **Column 4: Age (as in column 5, Block 4):** Similar to that in Block 5.1.

3.4.6.5 **Column 5: Purpose of the trip for the member (code):** Similar to that in Block 5.1.

3.4.6.6 **Column 6: Type of trip (code):** Similar to that in Block 5.1.

3.4.6.7 **Mode of travel (code) (for columns 7 and 8) :** Similar to that in Block 5.1.

3.4.6.8 **Column 9: type of stay (code):** The *type of stay* refers to the accommodation used for stay by visitor(s) in a trip. In a same-day trip, visitor(s) may stay in different types of places for rest during the trip. The type of place (place of longest stay if more than one) which was used for taking rest, refreshing oneself, etc. is to be recorded in this column. However, halt made only to take meals/snacks will not qualify as stay. The admissible codes are: hotel-1, private guest house-2, Govt. guest house -3, dharamshala-4, rented house-5, friends & relatives-6, did not stay at all-7, others including carriages/ coaches -9.

3.4.6.9 **Column 10: Leading purpose for all the members performing the trip (code):** Similar to that in Block 5.1.

3.4.6.10 **Column 11: Month of visit (code):** The month when the trip was undertaken is to be recorded against this item. Applicable codes are-January-01, February-02, March-03, April-04, May-05, June-06, July-07, August-08, September-09, October-10, November-11, December-12.

3.4.6.11 **Column 12: Main destination (code):** Similar to that in Block 5.1.

3.4.6.12 **Column 13: If code '3' in column 12 then state code:** Similar to that in Block 5.1.

3.4.6.13 **Column 14: No. of places visited during the trip:** Similar to that in Block 5.1.

For example, a visitor made a same-day trip covering Kolkata and Belur Math. His main destination was Kolkata. Then the entry in column 14 should be 2 (as Belur Math is in Howrah, not in Kolkata).

3.4.7 Block 6.1: Particulars of expenditure (in Rs.) for latest 3 trips in last 30 days covered in Block 5.1

3.4.7.0 In this block, expenditure on the latest 3 overnight trips ending during the last 30 days (of those which are covered in Block 5.1) is to be recorded separately. In the schedule, 3 columns are given to record the last 3 trips. All expenditure in connection with the trip except those to be used / intended to be used for resale or for productive purposes/enterprises are to be included in this block. Expenditure made before, during and after the trip and which is related to that trip under different mentioned heads is to be recorded. The payment may be made through cash, cheque, credit card, debit card, in instalments, etc. The total expenditure in all such cases irrespective of mode of payment should be recorded. **The approach to be followed is payable approach, i.e., it includes the expenditure which is already paid or payable in future.** Expenditure related to the trip, whether directly paid or reimbursed, by some institution like Government or other agencies on behalf of the selected household is included. All expenditure made by a sample household (whose members are on a trip) on members of other households is

to be included. But all expenditure made by other households for any trip undertaken by the sample household is to be excluded.

3.4.7.1 Item 1: trip serial no. [as in column 1, Block 5.1]: The serial number of trip as provided in Column 1 of Block 5.1 is to be copied against this item.

3.4.7.2 Item 2: type of trip [as in column 6, Block 5.1]: The type of trip as provided in Column 6 of Block 5.1 is to be copied against this item.

3.4.7.3 Item 3: package component: This has already been described under ‘type of trip’ in Block 5.1. To recapitulate, a package trip is a combination of transport and one or more chargeable travel services (e.g., accommodation, meals, entertainment, and sightseeing) which is sold by tour operators through travel agencies or directly to final consumers as a single product for a single price, which was availed for a majority time of the trip. A particular trip may have both package and non-package components. For example, for a particular trip a package may be availed of for transport, accommodation and breakfast for which separate break-up may not be available. The lump-sum expenditure incurred for this part is to be included against this item for each trip.

3.4.7.4 Non-package component: All expenditure, which do not come under package component related to a trip are to be recorded here item-wise. Sometimes the expenditure related to transport, accommodation, meals, entertainment, and sightseeing etc, may be partly covered in the package component. In such situation the non-package component of such expenditure should be recorded under the non-package component in this block.

3.4.7.4.1 Item 4: Accommodation: This is same as the *type of stay* referred to columns 9 & 10 in Block 5.1. The expenditure incurred on accommodation related to a trip will be reported under items 4.1 to 4.9.

3.4.7.4.1.1 Item 4.1: Hotel: A hotel is an establishment that provides paid lodging, usually on a short-term basis. At times, hotels provide a number of additional guest services such as a restaurant, a swimming pool, childcare, etc. Operationally, if the respondent claims that he/she stayed in a hotel, expenditure on such stay should be recorded against this item.

3.4.7.4.1.2 Item 4.2: Private guest house: These are the accommodation units owned and managed by private entrepreneurs/ bodies. Examples are Youth Hostels run by YMCA, YWCA, Guest Houses run by NGOs, Holiday Homes of banks and insurance companies managed by their recreation clubs, etc. Expenditure on such accommodation will come under this item.

3.4.7.4.1.3 Item 4.3: Govt. guest house: These are the accommodation units owned and managed by Central or State Governments/ local bodies. Examples are circuit houses, Panchayat Bhavans, different state guest houses like Andhra Bhavan, Maharashtra Bhavan, etc. in Delhi, Nizam Palace in Kolkata, Government Youth Hostels, etc. Expenditure on such accommodation will come under this item.

3.4.7.4.1.4 Item 4.4: Dharamshala: A Dharamshala is a rest house usually for accommodation of visitors during their pilgrimage. It is generally a dormitory for pilgrims located near religious places. Accommodation may be free or at some charge. Expenditure on such accommodation should come under this item.

3.4.7.4.1.5 **Item 4.5: Rented house:** If any part or whole of any residential unit, owned solely or jointly by an individual or a group of individuals, is rented to tourists then the expenditure towards that type of accommodation will come under this item.

3.4.7.4.1.6 **Item 4.6: Friends & relatives:** If the household members, during a trip, stay in their friends or relatives' house then the expenditure towards this accommodation is assumed to be nil and need not be recorded. If the informant reports that accommodation charges were paid to friends and relatives, the visitors should be regarded as having stayed in a *rented house* and the expenditure should be reported against item 4.5 of this block.

3.4.7.4.1.7 **Item 4.9: Others:** Amount spent on all other types of accommodation except on those mentioned in items 4.1 to 4.6 will come under this item. Examples are carriages/coaches, tents, second /vacation homes, etc. For each household, there is a dwelling that is considered as its primary home and whose location defines the usual place of residence for the members of this household. All other dwellings for this household are to be considered as second/vacation homes. Sometimes expenditure on accommodation may not be available separately in cases of carriages/coaches, which is generally included in the cost of transportation itself. For example, railway reservation charge is included in the fare as reservation charge for night journey.

3.4.7.4.1.8 **Item 4.0: Sub-total (4.1 to 4.9):** The total of all entries in 4.1 to 4.9 is to be recorded against this item.

3.4.7.4.2 **Item 5: Food & drink:** Under this item will come expenses on purchase of food and drink for consumption during the trip. These food and drinks items may be consumed as breakfast, lunch, tiffin, dinner, etc. The word 'drink' includes alcohol, water, *lassi*, milk and other beverages.

3.4.7.4.2.1 **Item 5.1: In the accommodation unit:** This includes the expenditure incurred on purchase of food and drinks in the accommodation units where the household members stay during the trip.

3.4.7.4.2.2 **Item 5.2: Outside accommodation unit and during journey and transit:** This includes the expenditure incurred on purchase of food and drinks outside the accommodation units where the household members stay during the trip, or during transit or journey time.

3.4.7.4.2.3 **Item 5.0: Sub-total (5.1 to 5.2):** The total of all entries in items 5.1 to 5.2 is to be recorded against this item.

3.4.7.4.3 **Item 6: Transport:** The items 6.1 to 6.9 are related to the expenditure on various forms of transport used for movement during a particular trip.

3.4.7.4.3.1 **Item 6.1: Railways:** All expenditure on railway fare, including super fast charges, reservation charges, *tatkal* charges, etc. paid to railway authorities is to be recorded against this item. Amount paid to travel agencies, etc., for booking railway tickets is **not** to be recorded here. This expenditure is to be recorded against item 6.6 of this block. If the travel is made by hired railway coach/carriage/saloon, the cost of such travel should come here. In some places the Railways may provide rail-cum-road services which is included in the total payment to be made to the railway authorities. In such cases, the entire amount paid to the railways should be recorded against this item. Expenditure towards travelling by toy train will come under this category provided it is necessary for travelling; otherwise if it is for joyride, the corresponding expenditure should be recorded against item 8.1 of this block.

3.4.7.4.3.2 Item 6.2: Road (excluding transport equipment rental): This includes expenditure on passenger transport by *bus* services; on own transport by *bicycle, two-wheeler, rickshaw, auto rickshaw, car/jeep, tractor/truck, animal driven transport* such as horse-carts (*tongas*), bullock-carts, camel-carts, etc.; on transport by animals like horseback, pony-back, etc.; on transport by humans such as *palki* (palanquin), *doli* carriages, *dandi*, etc., and on other road transport. Expenditure towards cost of fuel, engagement of drivers, and repair and maintenance of vehicle in case of own transport is also to be included.

3.4.7.4.3.3 Item 6.3: Water: This includes expenditure on water transport by ship/steamer/ boat / catamaran, etc., which is necessary for movement. Note that availing oneself of water transport for the purpose of joyride, water sports, river rafting, yachting, water-biking, adventure etc. will not come under this item but will be covered under item 8.1 or item 8.4 of this block, as the case may be.

3.4.7.4.3.4 Item 6.4: Air: This includes expenditure on air transport by flights/helicopter etc. Note that availing air transport for the purpose of adventure sport like ballooning, Para-gliding, Para-sailing etc. will not come under this item. It will come under 'Others' in item 9. All payments made to airlines relating to transport tax, insurance, passenger tax, etc. should be recorded here.

3.4.7.4.3.5 Item 6.5: Transport equipment rental: This includes expenditure on hired road transport by *bicycle, two-wheeler, rickshaw, auto rickshaw, taxi, car/jeep, tractor/truck, animal driven transport* such as horse-carts (*tongas*), bullock-carts, camel-carts, etc. This category excludes expenditure on travel by railways (included in item 6.1), by water (included in item 6.3) and by air (included in item 6.4). This category also excludes expenditure on transport by animal, such as horseback, pony-back, and transport by humans such as *palki* (palanquin), *doli* carriages, *dandi*, etc. (included in item 6.9). The transport equipment must be hired with or without the services of the operator (driver). If it is shared with any other person(s) who is/are not member(s) of the trip, except for the driver and helper, then only the part of the expenditure related to member(s) of the trip should be considered. If the transport equipment is hired without fuel and/or operator services, then expenditure towards cost of fuel, engagement of driver, etc. should be recorded here.

3.4.7.4.3.6 Item 6.6: Travel agency services/tour operators: Visitors (or potential visitors), when planning and organizing their trip, often use the services of travel agencies in order to get information on different alternatives and for bookings. The function of these agencies consists mainly of selling the right to use a certain service provided by others at a certain moment in time and within certain conditions. They play the role of providing information and access to the visitor and are the middleman in the purchase of certain services. Tour operators are businesses that combine transport and one or more chargeable travel services (e.g., accommodation, meals, entertainment, sightseeing) and sell them through travel agencies or directly to final consumers as a single product (called a package tour) for a single price. The expenditure incurred for booking of travel services like transport, accommodation, etc. including the commission recognized to travel agencies selling the package tours to the visitors is to be considered here. It may be noted here that the actual cost of travel services should **not** come here. Only the cost of booking these services through travel agencies/tour operators related to a trip should come here.

3.4.7.4.3.7 Item 6.9: Others and supporting services: This category includes expenditure on other motorised and non-motorised modes of transport not mentioned elsewhere related to a

trip like transport by animal like horseback, pony-back, etc; transport by humans such as *palki* (palanquin), *doli* carriages, *dandi* and transport by cable car/ropeway, etc.

3.4.7.4.3.8 **Item 6.0: Sub-total (6.1 to 6.9):** The total of all entries in 6.1 to 6.9 is to be recorded against this item.

3.4.7.4.4 **Item 7: Shopping:** The items 7.01 to 7.19 relate to purchase of any consumer good for own consumption or for gifts **but not for resale** or for use in a future productive process. The consumption may be during the trip or after the trip but not before the trip. This purchase may be made before, during or after the trip but it must be related to that trip. This includes all trips made to markets/ hats /malls which may be visited once in a month.

3.4.7.4.4.1 **Item 7.01: Clothing and garments:** This includes expenditure on clothes, viz. dhoti, sari, chaddar, dupatta, shawl, lungi, etc; readymade garments like shirt, trousers, pyjama, ladies suit, coats etc.; knitted garments like sweater, pullover, cardigan, etc; bed sheet, bed cover, blanket, pillow, quilts etc; socks, gloves, caps, knitting wool, towel and similar items.

3.4.7.4.4.2 **Item 7.02: Processed food:** This item includes expenditure incurred on tea, coffee, beverages like cold drinks, fruit juices, etc; bakery products like biscuits, cake, pastry, etc.; salted refreshment, prepared sweets, pickle, sauce, jam, jelly etc. and similar items. Items covered here are foods that are not purchased or consumed as regular breakfast, lunch or dinner during the trip (which are to be covered under item 5). However, items purchased during the trip for future consumption are to be covered here.

3.4.7.4.4.3 **Item 7.03: Tobacco products:** Expenditure on items like *pan*, *supari*, lime, *katha*, *bidi*, cigarette, *gutkha*, *pan masala*, etc. related to the trip should be recorded against this item.

3.4.7.4.4.4 **Item 7.04: Alcohol:** This item includes expenditure incurred on all kinds of alcoholic drinks like beer, foreign liquors, country liquors, toddy etc.

3.4.7.4.4.5 **Item 7.05: Travel related consumer goods:** Expenditure incurred on items like suitcases, trunk, hand bag, other travel goods; spectacles, sunglasses, pen, lock, umbrella, radio, Walkman, torch, batteries, etc.; photographic equipment like film, video cassette, CD, tripod, etc.; sports items, toys, etc. (except footwear) will be covered under this item. Even the expenditure incurred on items of high unit value like cars, computers, etc. related to a trip should be included if those are used for consumption purpose and not for productive purpose.

3.4.7.4.4.6 **Item 7.06: Footwear:** All types of footwear like rubber footwear, leather footwear, cloth footwear etc. will be covered under this item.

3.4.7.4.4.7 **Item 7.07: Toiletries:** all types of toiletries like toilet soap, washing soap, washing powder, hair oil, shampoo, cosmetics; tooth paste, tooth brush, tooth powder; talcum powder, face cream, deodorants, perfume, etc.; shaving equipments like shaving blade, shaving stick, razor, shaving cream, aftershave lotion, etc. and similar items will be covered under this item.

3.4.7.4.4.8 **Item 7.08: Gems and jewellery:** All expenses on gems and on jewellery, irrespective of their unit cost, incurred for the trip are to be covered here.

3.4.7.4.4.9 **Item 7.11: Books, journals, magazines, stationery, etc:** Expenditure on books, magazines, newspaper, library and other stationery purchased for the trip is to be recorded here.

3.4.7.4.4.10 **Item 7.19: Others:** All expenses on shopping not mentioned in the items 7.01 to 7.11 will come under this item. For example, expenditure on items like souvenirs, handicrafts, memento, etc. will be covered here.

3.4.7.4.4.11 **Item 7.00: Sub-total (7.01 to 7.19):** The total of all entries in 7.01 to 7.19 is to be recorded against this item.

3.4.7.4.5 **Item 8: Recreation, religious, cultural & sporting activities:** Expenditure on different recreational, religious, cultural and sporting activities during the trip are to be recorded irrespective of whether the expenditure was incurred before, during or after the trip.

3.4.7.4.5.1 **Item 8.1: Cinema, theatre, amusements, etc.:** This includes entry fees and all other incidental expenditure like tips, joyrides, etc. incurred during a trip on cinema, theatre, amusement park, juggling show, magic show, circus etc.

3.4.7.4.5.2 **Item 8.2: Entry fee to and other expenses for religious sites:** This includes *darshan* fees, *dakshina* for priests, expenditure on offerings, etc. It does not include donation to religious trusts, alms, etc. at those religious places.

3.4.7.4.5.3 **Item 8.3: Entry fee to and other expenses at cultural sites:** This includes entry fees to various archaeological sites, museums, historical places, etc. Expenditure on entry tickets for light and sound shows, etc. at various historical places like Lal Quila, Golkunda Fort, Mysore palace, Victoria Memorial, etc. will also be covered.

3.4.7.4.5.4 **Item 8.4: Sporting activities:** This includes entry fees or tickets for watching sporting events both outdoor and indoor, like football, cricket, table tennis, etc. Expenditure for participating in adventure sports like para-gliding, rafting, rock climbing etc. is also to be included here.

3.4.7.4.5.5 **Item 8.5: Medical and health related activities:** All medicine and health-related items, whether of regular use or purchased as a precautionary measure for the trip or purchased on the advice of medical practitioners during the trip, are to be covered here. Further, all expenditure, whether actually paid/payable by the household or directly paid / reimbursed by Government or other agencies (including medical insurance companies), are to be recorded here.

3.4.7.4.5.5.1 **Item 8.5.1: Medicine:** All medicines, irrespective of their type - allopathic, homeopathic, ayurvedic, etc. - of regular use or purchased as a precautionary measure for the trip or purchased on advice of medical practitioners during the trip are to be covered.

3.4.7.4.5.5.2 **Item 8.5.2: Medical accessories:** Expenditure on all types of medical accessories like knee caps, crutches, slings, bandages, cotton wool, Jaipur foot, spectacles, hearing aid, etc. made for the trip or during the trip are to be covered here.

3.4.7.4.5.5.3 **Item 8.5.3: Other health related services:** The expenses on medical tests and investigations, inoculation, vaccination, immunisation, health check-up, etc. required for or during the trip are also to be included here Also, during a trip, if a person made expenditure on sauna bath, massaging, steam bath etc. under medical advice then such expenditure should be reported here. Fees to the doctors or similar services are also to be covered here.

Note: If some expenses is made on services such as sauna bath, massaging, steam bath etc. taken for personal recreation then those are to be recorded under item 8.1

3.4.7.4.5.5.4 **Item 8.5.0: Sub-total [8.5.1 to 8.5.3]:** The total of all entries in 8.5.1 to 8.5.3 is to be recorded against this item.

3.4.7.4.5.6 **Item 8.0: Sub-total [8.1 + 8.2 + 8.3 + 8.4 + 8.5.0]:** The total of all entries in 8.1 to 8.4 and 8.5.0 is to be recorded against this item.

3.4.7.4.6 **Item 9: Others:** All other expenditure not indicated elsewhere, e.g. payment made to tourist guide, etc. will come under this item.

3.4.7.4.7 **Item 10: Sub-total (4.0 +5.0+ 6.0+7.00+8.0+9):** The total of all entries in 4.0, 5.0, 6.0, 7.00, 8.0 and 9 is to be recorded against this item.

3.4.7.4.8 **Item 11: Total [3+10]:** The total of entries in 3 and 10 is to be recorded against this item.

3.4.7.4.9 **Item 12: whether any reimbursement/direct payment made by any institution?(code)**

Expenditure on a particular trip may be partially or fully reimbursed or directly paid by Government or by some other agency. Examples are LTC /LTA given in Government, private organisations, banks, insurance companies like LIC, GIC, and travelling fares and accommodation costs defrayed by organisers of seminars, conferences, etc. Such amounts that are directly paid or reimbursed should be reported under the items 13 and 14. If the amount paid or reimbursed is more than that was actually spent then the amount actually spent will be reported here. The codes are:

- Yes and amount known -1,
- Yes and amount not known -2,
- No -3

If code '1' in item 12, amount (Rs.) paid/ reimbursed by

3.4.7.4.10 **Item 13: Government:** If any reimbursement/ payment is made by any Government organisation (Central Government or State Government or Local Bodies like Zilla Parishad, Municipal Corporations, Panchayats, etc.) for a trip undertaken by the household member(s), then the amount of reimbursement/ payment made is to be reported here.

Some examples in this regard are given in the box below.

- expenditure on trip of a Govt. employee who is on official tour is reimbursed by the Government;
- railway fare for appearing at an interview conducted by UPSC is reimbursed to the interviewee by the Government of India;
- expenditure incurred by the Government on a trip of an honorary chairperson/member of a Government Committee to attend Committee meetings.

3.4.7.4.11 **Item 14: Other agencies:** If any reimbursement/ payment is made by any other organisation like International Bodies, Public Sector Undertakings, Universities, NGOs etc. or by any private organisation, the amount of reimbursement/ payment made is to be reported here.

Note: If no break-up of the expenditure is available then remarks/comments for not getting such information should be recorded in detail in Blocks 7, 8 & 9 respectively.

3.4.8 Block 6.2: Particulars of aggregate expenditure (in Rs.) for all trips in last 30 days covered in Block 5.2

3.4.8.0 In this block, item-wise aggregate expenditure on all same-day trips ended in the last 30 days is to be recorded. Since the descriptions of items in this block are same as those in Block 6.1, no separate instructions are given.

3.4.9 Block 7: Remarks by investigator/senior investigator

3.4.9.0 Any remark which is considered necessary for explaining any peculiarity observed in the tourism characteristics, such as very large number of trips (as stated under items 7 and 8 of Block 3), very high or very low expenditure on trips, etc., should be recorded here. Such remarks will help to understand and to cross-check the schedule entries at the data processing stage.

3.4.10 Block 8: Comments by superintendent / senior superintendent

3.4.10.0 Superintendent / senior superintendent should note their views/comments on any peculiarity observed in the schedule canvassed by the investigator/senior investigator. They should also comment on or confirm the remarks made by the investigator/senior investigator.

3.4.11 Block 9. Comments by other supervisory officer

3.4.11.0 Here the supervisory officer(s) should put any comments which they may consider necessary to explain any peculiarity observed in the canvassed schedule.

Some examples of movements of a person to be considered as trip (*i.e., the movement should be outside the usual place of residence of the individual and it should not be in connection with activities, which form part of his regular routine of life*) or not.

Sl. no.	Question (Situations of movement of a person)	Reply
1.	The UPR of Mr. X is Burdwan. He commutes every day to Kolkata for work. Occasionally he also has to stay overnight at Kolkata in connection with the work. Will his movements outside his UPR be trips?	No
2.	The UPR of Mr. X is Burdwan. He commutes every day to Kolkata for work. However, on last weekend he has to stay overnight at Kolkata in connection with the marriage of his niece. Will this weekend movement of Mr. X be a trip?	Yes, since attending marriage is not a routine of his life
3.	The UPR of Mr. X is Burdwan. He commutes every day to Kolkata for work. However, on last working day he came to Kolkata after halting at Howrah for few hours to visit a relative. Will this Howrah movement of Mr. X be a trip?	No, since his main destination is Kolkata.
4.	The UPR of Mr. X is Burdwan. He commutes every day to Kolkata for work. On a weekday, Mrs. X accompanies Mr. X to Kolkata for visiting some relative. Will her movement outside her UPR be a trip?	Yes, if such a visit is not a routine of her life
5.	The UPR of Mr. X is in New Delhi. Generally, on weekends, he visits shopping mall in Gurgaon for the shopping of the provisions. Will his movements outside his UPR be trips?	No
6.	The household of Mr. X is listed in Gurgaon (as on the date of survey on 1 st July 2008) who has shifted three months back from New Delhi (on 31 st March 2008) after his retirement and intends to stay at Gurgaon for at least six months. What will be his UPR?	For deciding on trips, he will have two UPRs.
7.	The household of Mr. X is listed in Gurgaon (as on the date of survey on 1 st July 2008) who has shifted three months back from USA on 31 st March 2008) after completion of his foreign assignment. What will be his UPR?	For deciding on trips, he will have one UPR (Gurgaon)
8.	An investigator visiting a fixed place to collect rural price data with a periodicity of one month. Will his movements be trips?	Yes, since the periodicity exceeds a fortnight.
9.	Mr. A is a taxi driver in Kolkata MC area. He gets passengers for outside KMC area frequently, say, 2/3 times in a month. Are these trips?	No
10.	Mr. B works in Mahalanobis Bhavan (in Baranagar) but stays in Garia (about 25 Km. away). He visits his relative's place near ISI (in Baranagar) occasionally, say, once in a month. Is it a trip?	Yes, if not on office duty on that day

Sl. no.	Question (Situations of movement of a person)	Reply
11.	Ms. C is a Sub-Inspector of Kolkata Police. She has to travel to other District HQs with the convicted women frequently, say, 2/3 times in a month? Are her movements trips?	No
12.	Mr. X's parents stay in village. But as Mr. X is staying in Metro, they come to him bi-monthly or so for 'feel good' purpose. Are their movements trips? If Mr. X visits his parents in same frequency, will it be a trip? Both the households got selected in rural and urban FSUs.	Yes
13.	Mr. X is from village. But on every festival and other occasions, he comes to Kolkata for shopping. It may be 2/3 times in one month, no visit next month, once only following month, etc. Should his coming to Kolkata for shopping only be considered trips?	Yes
14.	The UPR of Mr. X is Mumbai. He regularly drives lorry to transport goods to various parts of the country. Will his movements outside his UPR be trips?	No
15.	Mr. X is a regular employee in a private organization. His UPR is Kolkata. He is having a car which he rented out on weekend holidays to a family for travelling to Digha from Kolkata and return back, driving himself. Will his movement outside his UPR be a trip?	Yes
16.	Mr. X is a regular employee of a tour operator as a guide. His UPR is Bangalore. He has to accompany tourists to various tourists' spots in Karnataka or neighbouring places. Will his movements outside his UPR be trips?	No
17.	Mr. X is a Central Government employee posted in Delhi. His UPR is also Delhi. He attended an official training programme at Faridabad for five continuous days travelling everyday from Delhi. Will his movements outside his UPR be trips?	Yes
18.	The UPR of Mr. X is Kolkata. From his UPR he travelled to Kathmandu, Nepal by rail & road via Raxaul, Bihar where he stayed for one night and returned back to his UPR directly by air from Kathmandu. Will his movement outside his UPR be trip?	Yes, only the part of the travel from his UPR to Raxaul.

Chapter Four

Schedule 1.2: Housing Condition

INTRODUCTION

4.0.0 The National Sample Survey Organisation (NSSO) has been collecting data on 'Housing Conditions and Other Amenities' almost since its inception. Data on the structural aspects of dwelling units and basic housing amenities such as drinking water, bathrooms, sewerage, latrine, lighting, etc., available to them were collected from the 7th round (October 1953 – March 1954) to the 23rd round (July 1968 – June 1969) of NSS. These surveys were essentially exploratory in nature, designed to give only a broad idea of the dimensions of variables reflecting housing conditions at the national level. Two comprehensive surveys on housing condition were carried out in the 28th round (October 1973 – June 1974) and in the 44th round (July 1988 – June 1989), covering both rural and urban areas of the country. In its 49th round (January-June 1993), the NSSO again took up "housing condition" as one of the subjects of enquiry. The fourth survey in the series was conducted in the 58th round during July-December 2002, after a gap of nearly ten years. In 58th round also, information was collected on the structural aspects of dwelling units and basic housing amenities such as drinking water, bathrooms, sewerage, latrine, lighting, etc. Information on the structure, cost and financing of construction activities carried out by households during the last five years was also collected, as well as data on expenditure incurred for acquiring new *residential* units through direct purchase rather than construction. For households living in urban slums, some general particulars were collected through the same schedule of enquiry during NSS 58th round, but unlike the previous NSS survey of slums, the survey on NSS 58th round restricted the concept of slum to urban areas only. During NSS 65th round (July 2008 - June 2009), survey on 'Housing Condition' will be covered along with the surveys on 'Domestic Tourism' and 'Particulars of Slums'.

4.0.1 A Working Group was set up for the purpose of finalising the survey methodology and schedules of enquiry of the 65th round survey. Considering all the aspects of current data demand and usefulness of the survey results, the Group has suggested a few improvisations, additions and deletions in the content of the schedule of enquiry for the present survey. The major changes made in the schedule for the survey on housing condition vis-à-vis NSS 58th round are given below:

- a) Average monthly household consumer expenditure will be collected in five questions in place of a single-shot question.
- b) In this round, information regarding household migration will not be collected.
- c) The codes for collecting information on tenurial status of the dwelling unit have been restructured to suit the requirements of MDG.
- d) Information on primary source of energy for cooking and about the possession of some items of assets by the households will not be collected. Though the primary source of energy for lighting will not be collected, a question has been put to collect information on whether the household has electricity for domestic use and the type of electrical wiring.
- e) In NSS 58th round, for households staying in a rented house, information was collected on i) year of taking on rent, ii) non-adjusted deposit paid, iii) whether

the non-adjusted deposit paid was recoverable at the time of vacation of house, and iv) residential status of landlord. Imputed rent was also collected for households that stayed in houses that were not hired. In this round, information on monthly rent paid or payable for hired accommodation will only be collected.

- f) Information in respect of 'period since built' will be collected for households with own dwelling. Moreover, the information on 'year of start' and 'year of completion' will be collected only for the houses built during last 5 years.
- g) Instead of collecting information for at most two constructions at the 'present premises' and for at most two at 'elsewhere' initiated during the last 5 years, information will be collected for all constructions undertaken (completed and in-progress) during the last 365 days.
- h) Information on first-hand purchase of constructed house/flat at 'present premises' and 'elsewhere' during the last 365 days will be collected, instead of total expenditure incurred for acquiring new residential unit during last 5 years.
- i) The blocks for collecting information on 'particulars of dwelling/land owned elsewhere within the country' and 'some general particulars of slum dwellers' will not be canvassed.

4.0.2 For collecting and recording of household principal industry, NIC-2004 will be used. It is important to note that the industry Divisions 96 and 97 of NIC-2004 will not be used for the purpose of collection of information on industry of activity. The entire activities described under Division 97 are not under the production boundary of Indian System of National Accounts (ISNA) and are not also considered as economic activities in NSS survey. A part of the activities under Division 96 (viz., hunting and gathering, farming and the production of shelter), which is within the production boundary of ISNA, is also considered as economic activities in NSS surveys and the industry of these undifferentiated activities will be judged in the usual manner as is done now, by considering the industry in which major time is spent. Thus, this part of activities will get classified against the respective industries under divisions 01-14 relating to the primary sector or 45 relating to construction. The rest of Division 96 is outside the production boundary of ISNA and will not be considered as economic activity for NSS survey.

SUMMARY DESCRIPTION OF THE SCHEDULE

4.0.3 In the present round, Schedule 1.2 on housing condition consists of 11 blocks. The first three blocks, viz. Blocks 0, 1 and 2, are used to record identification of sample households and particulars of field operations, as is the common practice in usual NSS rounds. Similarly, the last three blocks, viz., Blocks 8, 9 & 10, are again the usual blocks to record the remarks of investigator/senior investigator, comments by superintendent/senior superintendent and comments by other supervisory officer(s), respectively. Block 3 will be for recording the household characteristics like household size, gender of the head of the household, principal industry and occupation, religion, social group, household type, land possessed, tenurial status of dwelling, area type in which the dwelling unit is located, maximum distance to the place of work normally travelled by any earner of the household, monthly per capita consumer expenditure, etc. Block 4 will be used for recording the particulars of living facilities, such as major source of drinking water, availability of bathroom, use of latrine, type of latrine, whether the household has electricity for domestic use, etc. Particulars of housing characteristics and micro environment, such as plinth area of the house, plinth level, use of house, period since

built, condition of structure, drainage arrangement, etc, will be collected in Block 5. Block 6 is for collecting information on particulars of dwelling such as number of rooms, floor area of the dwelling, ventilation of the dwelling, total number of married couples in the household, kitchen type, floor type, wall type, roof type, etc. Particulars of construction and repair, undertaken by the households during the last 365 days, for residential purpose will be collected in Block 7. This will include cost of construction, source of finance and first-hand purchase of constructed house/ flat during the last 365 days.

Concepts and definitions

4.0.4 Concepts and definitions for various terms used in this schedule have been discussed in Chapter One.

DETAILS OF SCHEDULE

4.0.5 **Block 0: Descriptive identification of sample household:** This block is meant for recording descriptive identification particulars of the sample household and the sample village/block to which the sample household belongs. All the items in this block are self-explanatory. Items 4 and 5 are applicable to rural areas only and a dash '-' will be put against these items in urban schedule. The name of the hamlet to which the sample household belongs will be recorded against the fifth item 'hamlet name'. On the other hand, for a sample village with no hamlet group selection, a dash (-) is to be recorded against this item. Item 6 is applicable to urban areas only and a dash (-) will be put against this item in rural schedules. The name of the head of the household will be recorded in item 7 and the entry against the last item (item 8), viz., 'name of informant', will be the name of the principal informant, i.e., the person from whom the bulk of the information is collected.

4.1.0 **Block 1: Identification of sample household:** The identification particulars of the sample household are to be recorded against items 1, 4 to 15. The entries against items 2 and 3 are already printed in the schedule. Items 1 and 4 to 12 will be copied from the relevant items of block 1 of Schedule 0.0.

4.1.1 **Item 13: Hamlet group/sub-block number:** The entry against this item will be either 1 or 2 whenever hamlet-group or sub-block has been formed in the selected village or urban block. Otherwise, the entry against this item will always be 1. This information will be obtained from the heading of block 5 of schedule 0.0 where the hamlet-group or sub-block number has been recorded.

4.1.2 **Item 14: Second stage stratum number:** This will be taken from headings of columns (23) to (25) of block 5 of schedule 0.0. Entries will be any of 1, 2 or 3 depending upon the second stage stratum number to which the sample household belongs.

4.1.3 **Item 15: Sample household number:** This is same as the order of selection of the sample household and will be copied from columns (23) to (25) of block 5 of schedule 0.0.

4.1.4 Item 16: Informant's relation to head (code): Information in this schedule will be collected from the usual members of the household. The informant will be the household member who provides bulk of the information for the selected household. In case, the household members of the selected household could not provide bulk of the information, the household will be substituted by another household. Informant's relation to the head of the household will be ascertained and recorded in codes in this item. The relevant codes to be used are:

head of household	1
other member(s) of household	2

4.1.5 Item 17: Response code: This item will be filled in after collecting information for all items in the schedule. The entry is to be made in terms of codes on the basis of the impression formed by the investigator regarding the overall response of the informant. The codes, to be used, are:

informant co-operative and capable	1
informant co-operative but not capable	2
informant busy	3
informant reluctant	4
others	9

4.1.6 Item 18: Survey code: Whether the originally selected sample household or a substituted household has been surveyed will be indicated against this item by recording code '1' if the originally selected household has been surveyed and code '2' if the substitute household has been surveyed. If neither the originally selected household nor a substitute household could be surveyed, i.e., if the sample household is a casualty, code '3' will be recorded. In case of a casualty, only the blocks 0, 1, 2, 8, 9 and 10 are to be filled up and on the top of the front page of the schedule the word 'CASUALTY' will be written in block capitals.

4.1.7 Item 19: Reason for substitution of original household (code): For an originally selected sample household, which could not be surveyed, irrespective of whether a substituted household could be surveyed or not, the reason for not surveying the original household will be recorded against item 19 in terms of codes. The codes are:

informant busy	1
members away from home	2
informant non-cooperative	3
others	9

This item is applicable if the entry against item 18 is either 2 or 3. Otherwise, this item is to be left blank.

4.2.0 Block 2: Particulars of field operations: The identity of the investigator/ senior investigator, superintendent/senior superintendent, other supervisory officer associated, date of survey/ inspection/ scrutiny of schedules, despatch, etc., will be recorded in this block against the appropriate items in the relevant columns. Person codes of field officials are to be recorded against item 1(ii) (for central sample only). If the schedule is required to be canvassed for more than one day, the first day of survey is to be recorded against the item serial number 2 (i). Additional sheet(s) of block 7, if used, is to be firmly tagged with the schedule and number of sheets used to be recorded against item 3 of this block.

4.2.1 Item 4: Total time taken to canvass schedule 1.2 (in minutes): Total time taken to canvass schedule 1.2, will be recorded in item 4 in whole number in minutes. The time required to canvass the schedule should be the actual time taken to canvass the schedule and will not include the time needed by the investigator/ senior investigator to finalise the schedule.

4.2.2 Item 5: Whether the schedule contains remarks? (yes -1, no-2): In blocks 8, 9 and 10, remarks of (i) investigator/ senior investigator, (ii) superintendent / senior superintendent and (iii) other supervisory officer are to be recorded when some difficulty is encountered in collection of data or if some of the items of information seem doubtful in nature. Besides the remarks blocks, sometimes remarks are also recorded in the available blank spaces in the schedules. These remarks may help to make proper assessment of the entries made in the schedule. Entry will be 1 in column 3/4/5 of item 5 if relevant remarks are recorded, else entry will be 2. If remarks have been recorded in block 8, entry will be 1 against column 3, otherwise entry will be 2. Similarly, entry will be 1 in column 4, if remarks are made in block 9/10. If remarks are recorded elsewhere in the schedule, entry will be 1 in column 5; else entry in column 5 will be 2.

4.3.0 Block 3: Household characteristics: Block 3 will be for recording the household characteristics like household size, gender of the head of the household, principal industry and occupation, religion, social group, household type, tenurial status of dwelling, land possessed, area type in which the dwelling unit is located, maximum distance to the place of work normally travelled by any earner of the household, monthly per capita consumer expenditure, etc.

4.3.1 Items 1 to 3: Household size: Household size is to be recorded in these items. The total number of male (including eunuch), female and total members of the household will be recorded in items 1, 2 and 3, respectively.

4.3.2 Item 4: Gender of the head of the household: In this item, gender of the head of the household will be recorded. Code 1 will be recorded if the head of household is male and code 2 will be recorded if the head of the household is female. If the head of household is eunuch, code '1' will also be recorded.

4.3.3 Item 5: Principal industry (NIC-2004): The description of the principal household industry will be recorded in the space provided. The appropriate five-digit industry code of the NIC-2004 is to be recorded against 5 cells provided for recording NIC codes putting one digit in each cell. For households deriving income from non-economic activities only, (e.g. for a household where income is derived only from

pension/ begging/ prostitution, etc.) a dash (-) may be put against this item with appropriate remarks in Block 8.

4.3.4 Item 6: Principal occupation (NCO-2004): The description of the principal household occupation will be recorded in the space provided. The appropriate three-digit occupation code of the NCO-2004 is to be recorded against 3 cells provided for recording the NCO codes putting one digit in each cell. For households deriving income from non-economic activities only, a dash (-) may be put against this item.

4.3.4.1 The procedure for determining principal industry and principal occupation of the household has been discussed in Chapter One.

4.3.5 Item 7: Household type: For the **rural** areas, the selected household will be assigned appropriate type code out of the following five different household type codes:

self-employed in non-agriculture	1
<i>rural labour:</i>	
agricultural	2
.....	
other labour	3
self-employed in agriculture	4
others	9

For **urban** areas, the household type codes are as follows:

self-employed	1	casual labour	3
regular wage/salary earning.....	2	others	9

4.3.5.1 Procedure for assigning household type codes in rural and urban sectors has been given in Chapter Three.

4.3.6 Item 8: Religion: The religion of the household will be recorded against this item in codes. If different members of the household claim to belong to different religions, the religion of the head of the household will be considered as the religion of the household. The codes are:

Hinduism	1	Jainism	5
Islam	2	Buddhism	6
Christianity	3	Zoroastrianism	7
Sikhism	4	others	9

4.3.7 Item 9: Social group: Whether the household belongs to scheduled tribe, scheduled caste or other backward class will be indicated against this item in terms of the following codes:

scheduled tribe	1
scheduled caste	2

other backward class	3
others	9

Those who do not come under any one of the first three social groups will be assigned code 9. In case, different members belong to different social groups, the social group to which the head of the household belongs will be considered as the 'social group' of the household.

4.3.8 Item 10: Land possessed as on date of survey: Land possessed is given by land owned (including land under 'owner like possession') + land leased in – land leased out + land held by the household but neither owned nor leased in (e.g., encroached land). The area of land possessed by the household within the country only as on the date of survey will be worked out in hectares and the relevant code corresponding to the area of land is to be recorded against this item. The codes are:

class interval (in hectare)	code	class interval (in hectare)	code
less than 0.005.....	01	2.01 – 3.01	07
0.005 - 0.02	02	3.01 - 4.01	08
0.02 - 0.21	03	4.01 - 6.01	10
0.21 - 0.41.....	04	6.01 - 8.01	11
0.41 - 1.01.....	05	greater than or equal to 8.01.....	12
1.01 – 2.01	06		

Note: 1 acre = 0.4047 hectare, 1 hectare=10,000 square metre

If the sample household does not possess any land, a dash '-' may be entered against this item.

4.3.9 Item 11: Tenorial status of dwelling : Information in respect of the tenorial status of the dwelling unit will be recorded against this item in codes. The codes are:

<i>owned:</i>	freehold	1
	leasehold.....	2
	...	
<i>hired:</i>	employer quarter	3
	hired dwelling units with written contract.....	4
	hired dwelling units without written contract.....	5

others	9
no dwelling	6

A dwelling unit is considered to be 'owned' by the sample household if permanent heritable possession with or without the right to transfer the title is vested in a member or members of the household. Dwelling units in owner-like possession under long term lease or assignment is also considered as owned. If the sample household has the right of permanent heritable possession of the dwelling unit with or without the right to transfer the title, such dwelling units will be considered as 'freehold' and code 1 will be recorded. Dwelling units held under special conditions such that the holder does not possess the title of ownership of the dwelling unit but the right for long term possession of the dwelling unit (e.g., dwelling units possessed under perpetual lease, hereditary tenure and long term lease for 30 years or more) will be considered as being 'leasehold' and for such type of dwelling units code 2 will be considered. If the dwelling unit, in which the sample household lives, is provided by an employer to a member of the sample household, such dwelling units will be considered as 'employer quarter' and code 3 will be assigned. If the dwelling is taken on rent, by the sample household, which is payable at monthly, quarterly or any other periodic intervals or on lease, for a period of less than 30 years, it will be treated as a hired dwelling. It may be noted that a hired dwelling unit may be free of rent also. If the sample household had taken the dwelling unit in rent with written contract with its owner, for such dwelling unit, code 4 will be entered. On the other hand, if the sample household lives in a hired dwelling unit without a written contract with the owner of the dwelling unit, code 5 will be entered for such dwelling unit. Households living more or less regularly, under bridges, in pipe, etc., in purely temporary flimsy improvisations built by the roadside (which are liable to be removed any moment), are considered to have no dwellings and for such households code 6 will be recorded against this item. Code 9 will be entered in all other types of possession of the dwelling unit (e.g., encroached one).

4.3.10 Item 12: If entry 1 to 5 or 9 in item 11, area type in which the dwelling unit is located: For those who are living in houses (i.e., excluding those with no dwelling: code 6 in item 11), information on the type of area in which the dwelling unit is located will be recorded against this item in terms of codes. The codes are:

notified slum.....	1
non-notified slum.....	2
squatter settlement.....	3
other areas.....	9

For households in rural areas, code 9 will only be recorded.

4.3.10.1 To collect this information, apart from the informant belonging to the sample household, some knowledgeable persons of the locality may have to be contacted.

4.3.10.2 In case the dwelling unit is situated in a slum area, then code 1 will be recorded if the area is notified as a slum by the municipality or other competent authorities; otherwise code 2 will be recorded. Sometimes an area develops into an unauthorised settlement with unauthorised structures put up by “squatters”. Such an area, if not notified as a slum area by the competent authorities will be considered as a “squatter settlement” and dwelling units located in such an area will get code 3. For all other areas, code 9 will be recorded against this item.

4.3.11 **Item 13: Maximum distance to the place of work normally travelled by any earner of the household (code):** Information for this item will be collected with a reference period of last 365 days. A household member with earning either from **economic** activities and/or from **non-economic** activities will be considered as an earner in the household. Place of work will refer to the place where the activities, considering both the economic and non-economic activities together, are performed by the earners. Distance will mean the one way actual distance from residence to the place of work normally travelled by the earner. For a household with a single earner, there will not be any problem in ascertaining the maximum distance normally travelled to the place of work by him/her. In case there is more than one earner in a household, the distance will be the maximum distance travelled by any earner. The relevant codes for this item are:

not required to travel.....	1
<i>travelled a distance of:</i>	
less than 1 k.m.....	2
1 k.m. or more but less than 5 k.m.....	3
5 k.m. or more but less than 10 k.m.....	4
10 k.m. or more but less than 15 k.m.....	5
15 k.m. or more but less than 30 k.m.	6
30 k.m. or more.....	7

However, for the pensioners, remittance recipients and rentiers, who may travel certain distances to collect money from the banks or post offices or from the tenants, code 1 will always be entered. For persons, whose place of work is not fixed, e.g., hawkers, casual workers, mobile trade, beggars, etc., the distance normally travelled from residence to the farthest point of his/her area of operation may be considered for assigning codes in this item. In all the situations, the distance normally travelled from residence to the farthest point of his/her place of activity will be ascertained and the relevant code will be entered.

4.3.12 **Items 14 to 19: Household consumer expenditure:** The household consumer expenditure during the last 30 days is to be ascertained through 5 questions and recorded in whole number of rupees in the following items:

- item 14: purchase,
- item 15: home produced stock,
- item 16: receipts in exchange of goods and services,
- item 17: gifts and loans,
- item 18: free collection,

In item 19 total of the entries in items 14 to 18 will be recorded.

4.3.12.1 Detailed procedure for ascertaining household consumer expenditure through these five questions is given in Chapter Three.

4.4.0 **Block 4: Particulars of living facilities:** In block 4, information relating to housing amenities, such as major source of drinking water, facility of bathroom, use of latrine, type of latrine, whether the household has electricity for domestic use, etc., will be collected.

4.4.1 **Item 1: Major source of drinking water (record the two most often used sources against cell 1 and cell 2 in descending order of uses):** In item 1, information in respect of the household's major source of drinking water during the last 365 days will be collected. Since a household may use more than one source of drinking water, provision has been made to record two such sources in column 3 of item 1 against cell 1 and cell 2, respectively. Entry in cell 1 will relate to that source of drinking water which is used most by the household and in cell 2, entry will relate to the second most used source of drinking water. However, if a household has only one source of drinking water, the relevant entry will be made against cell 1, and a dash (-) may be put in cell 2.

The relevant codes are:

bottled water.....	01
tap.....	02
tube well/hand pump.....	03
<i>well:</i>	
protected.....	04
unprotected.....	05
tank/pond (reserved for drinking).....	06
other tank/pond	07
river/canal/lake	08
spring.....	10
.	
harvested rainwater.....	11
others.....	19

Drinking water packaged in bottles, pouches, and similar containers will be classified as bottled drinking water. Generally this packaged drinking water meets certain safety standards and are considered safe for drinking. However, tap water, well water, etc., kept by households in bottles, for convenience, will not be treated as bottled drinking water. If bottled drinking water is major source of drinking water, code 01 will be appropriate. If an arrangement is made by corporation, municipality, panchayat or other local authorities or any private or public housing estate or agency to supply water through pipe for household uses and if the sample household is availing such facility, then code 02 will be appropriate. Drinking water carried through pipe from sources like well, tank, river, etc., by the owner / occupants only for convenience of the household, however, will not be treated as tap water. Instead, such a source will get the code appropriate to the actual source from which water is carried through pipe. A well is considered as protected if has generally the following protective measures to lower the risk of contamination:

- 1) A headwall around the well with a properly fitting cover
- 2) A concrete drainage platform around the well with a drainage channel
- 3) A handpump or bucket with windlass

A well which does not have protective measures to lower the risk of contamination will be considered as unprotected well. Rainwater harvesting is the gathering or accumulating and storing of rainwater. Traditionally, rainwater harvesting has been practised in arid and semi-arid areas, and has provided drinking water, domestic water, water for livestock, etc. When harvested rainwater is used as a major source of drinking water code 11 will be applicable. The other codes are self-explanatory.

4.4.2 Item 2: Whether availability of drinking water from the first source (most often used source) is sufficient throughout the year?: This information will be collected in respect of the ‘most often used source’ recorded against cell 1 of item 1. For collecting this information, the investigator will have to depend on the judgement of the informant. Code 1 will be recorded if the reply is affirmative; otherwise code 2 will be recorded.

4.4.3 Item 3: If code 2 in item 2, during which calendar months of the year availability of drinking water was not sufficient?: For the households which did not get sufficient drinking water throughout the year from the first source (most often used source), information will be collected regarding the calendar months of the year during which availability of drinking water was not sufficient from the first source. 12 cells have been provided against this item to record information for all the 12 calendar months of the year. Each cell is earmarked, with the name of the month written at the top of the cell to enter the code for eligible month. Code ‘1’ will be recorded in the cell for the calendar month if availability of drinking water was not sufficient in that month. The cell(s) corresponding to the calendar month(s) will be left blank for which availability of drinking water was not considered not sufficient during the year. Thus, if a particular household had two sources of drinking water, say, ‘tube well’ and ‘spring’, with ‘tube well’ being the first source (most used source) and the household did not get sufficient drinking water from ‘tube well’ for the months of May, June, July and December, the entries in the cells for item 3 will be as follows:

3.	if code 2 in item 2, during which calendar months of the year availability of drinking water was not sufficient? <i>(record ‘1’ against the applicable month(s) and rest of the months to be left blank)</i>	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun
						1	1
		Jul	Aug	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec
		1					1

4.4.4 Item 4: Facility of drinking water: For the households with more than one sources of drinking water recorded in item 1, the information for this item will relate to the first source (most often used source). Information as to whether the household’s first source of drinking water is for its exclusive use or is shared with other households/community will be indicated in codes. The codes are:

- household’s exclusive use 1
- common use of households in the building .. 2

community use	3
others.....	9

If the source is for the exclusive use of the household, code 1 will be recorded. If the source is shared by the household with one or more households in the building, code 2 will be recorded. If the source is for community use, i.e., for use of households in the locality, code 3 will be recorded. If the source of drinking water is shared by and restricted to a few households in the locality or in other situations, code 9 will be entered.

4.4.5 Item 5: Distance to the source of drinking water: For the households with more than one sources of drinking water recorded in item 1, the information for this item will relate to the first source (most often used source). The distance to the first source of drinking water from the dwelling unit will be ascertained and recorded in codes. The codes are:

within dwelling	1
outside dwelling but within the premises	2
<i>outside premises:</i>	
less than 0.2 k.m.....	3
0.2 k.m. or more but less than 0.5 km.....	4
0.5 k.m. or more but less than 1.0 k.m.....	5
1.0 k.m. or more but less than 1.5 k.m.....	6
1.5 k.m. or more.....	7

If the source of drinking water is within the dwelling unit, code 1 will be recorded. When the source is outside the dwelling but within the premises of the dwelling unit, code 2 will be recorded. In the other cases, i.e., when the source is outside the premises, the distance of the source from the dwelling unit will be ascertained and appropriate distance code will be entered.

4.4.6 Item 6: Facility of bathroom: Information about the bathroom facility available to the members of the household will be indicated against this item in codes. The codes are:

<i>bathroom:</i>	
attached	1
detached	2
no bathroom	3

If the dwelling unit does not have a bathroom in its premises, code 3 will be recorded. If the dwelling unit has one or more bathrooms attached to the dwelling unit (i.e., with direct access from its rooms, veranda or corridor) code 1 will be recorded. If the bathroom is in a structure separated from the main building which also contains rooms used for living purposes, 1 will also be the appropriate code. On the other hand, if it has a bathroom in its premises but not attached to dwelling unit, code 2 will be recorded. An

enclosed area without a roof used for bathing purposes, or any living room / kitchen used for bathing purpose will not be considered a bathroom for that dwelling.

4.4.7 Item 7: Distance from the bathing place: The distance of the bathing place from the dwelling unit will be ascertained and entered against this item in codes. If the household members use more than one bathing place, the one used by majority of the members will be its bathing place. An enclosed area without a roof used for bathing purposes will also be considered as a bathing place, but not as a bathroom. The relevant codes are:

within dwelling	1
outside dwelling but within the premises	2
<i>outside premises:</i>	
less than 0.2 k.m.....	3
0.2 k.m. or more but less than 0.5 km.....	4
0.5 k.m. or more but less than 1.0 k.m.....	5
1.0 k.m. or more but less than 1.5 k.m.....	6
1.5 k.m. or more.....	7

To facilitate data collection, the code structures for item 7 and item 5 have been kept same. It may be noted that code 1 in this item is applicable for the sample households with code 1 in item 6 (i.e., if the sample household has attached bathroom) and code 2 in this item is applicable for the sample households with code 2 in item 6 (i.e., if the sample household has detached bathroom). Codes 3 to 7 are applicable for those sample households which does not have bathroom.

4.4.8 Item 8: Use of latrine: In this item information will be collected about whether the household's latrine facility is for its exclusive use or shared with one or more households in the building or for use of households in the locality or whether the household does not have access to latrine facility. The codes relevant for are as follows:

exclusive use of household.....	1
shared latrine with other household(s)	2
public/community latrine.....	3
no latrine.....	4

If the latrine facility is for the exclusive use of the household, code 1 will be recorded. If the latrine facility is shared by the household with one or more households in the building, code 2 will be recorded. If the latrine facility is for use of the households in the locality, or is for a specific section of people, code 3 will be recorded. If the household does not have access to latrine facility, i.e., if its members use open area as latrine, code 4 will be entered.

4.4.9 Item 9: If code 1, 2 or 3 in item 8, type of latrine: For the households who have access to latrine (i.e., if entry is 1, 2 or 3 in item 8), the type of latrine used by the household will be recorded in codes. The codes are:

service.....	1
--------------	---

pit.....	2
septic tank/flush.....	3
not known.....	4
other latrine.....	9

A latrine connected to underground sewerage system is called flush system latrine. A latrine connected to underground septic chambers will be considered as a septic tank latrine. A latrine connected to a pit dug in earth is called a pit latrine. In a few areas, one may still come across latrines that are serviced by scavengers. These are called service latrines. Appropriate code of the type of latrine used by the household will be entered in item 9.

4.4.10 Item 10: Whether the household has electricity for domestic use?: If the household has electricity facilities for domestic use code 1 will be recorded, otherwise code will be 2. The use of the electricity may be for lighting or cooking or for both. Electricity may be used legally or illegally and the electricity may be supplied to the household either through public agencies, corporations or by private suppliers. However, if the household makes its own arrangement, either through generator or solar panel, to generate electricity, the household will not be considered as having electricity for domestic use.

4.4.11 Item 11: If code 1 in item 10, type of electric wiring: If the sample household has electricity for domestic use, type of electric wiring available in the dwelling unit will be indicated here. The codes are:

conduit wiring	1
fixed to the walls	2
temporary	3

Note that conduit is a pipe or tube used for carrying insulated electric wires.

4.5.0 Block 5: Housing characteristics and micro environment: This block will be filled in for those households who are living in houses, i.e., for those households with entry 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or 9 in item 11 of block 3. Information relating to the house/building in which the sample household lives and particulars relating to the environment around the house/building will be collected in this block. For collecting information in this block, there will not be any problem in case the sample household is occupying the entire house/building or a part of it for dwelling purpose. But if the household is occupying more than one structure for dwelling purpose, then the information in respect of items 2 to 7 will relate to the structure which has got maximum floor area among all the structures used for dwelling purpose

4.5.1 Item 1: Plinth area of the house (in square feet and in whole numbers): Plinth area is the total constructed area of the surface on the ground over which the structure is created. The plinth area will be recorded against this item in square feet and in whole numbers. In case more than one structure is used by the household, total plinth area of all the structures taken together will be recorded. In case of a multi-storeyed building, plinth area will refer to the surface on the ground over which the structure is created.

4.5.2 Item 2: Plinth level (in feet and in whole numbers): Plinth level means the constructed ground floor level from the land (at the main entrance of the building) on which the building is constructed. If the ground floor is at the same level as the land on which the house stands, it will be considered as having no plinth and '0' will invariably be recorded. It may be noted that plinth level of the building is to be recorded, even if the household is residing in a floor higher or lower than the ground floor. If the building consists of more than one structure, plinth level of the building will relate to the main (in the sense of having greater floor area) structure used for residential purpose. The plinth level will be recorded against this item in feet and in whole numbers.

4.5.3 Item 3: Use of house: The purpose for which the house is used will be entered against this item. The codes are:

residential only	1
residential-cum-commercial.....	2
residential-cum-others	9

If the house is used exclusively for residential purpose, code 1 will be applicable. If the house is used for residential purposes as well as for carrying out economic activities, like, production of goods, production of services or trading of goods, etc., code 2 will be entered. In all other cases, such as when the house is used for residential purpose and for some non-economic activities, code 9 will be applicable.

4.5.4 Item 4: If codes 1 or 2 in item 11 of block 3 (i.e., for the household with own dwelling), period since built: Information on the 'period since built' will be collected only from the sample households with own dwelling, i.e., if entry in item 11 of block 3 is either 1 or 2. Period since built will be counted from the time the dwelling unit was ready for possession for the first time after completion of the building and this information will be entered in terms of codes. The codes are:

less than 1 year	1
1 year or more but less than 5 years	2
5 years or more but less than 10 years	3
10 years or more but less than 20 years	4
20 years or more but less than 40 years	5
40 years or more but less than 60 years.....	6
60 years or more but less than 80 years	7
80 years or more	8

Note that period since built is to be decided in respect of the ground floor of the building when the different stories were built at different times.

4.5.5 Items 5 and 6: If code 1 or 2 in item 4, year of start and year of completion: For dwelling units which were built during the last 5 years (i.e., for dwelling units with code 1 or 2 in item 4), information on 'year of start' and 'year of completion' will be collected, in items 5 and 6 respectively. Four cells have been provided against each of the items 5 and 6 for recording four digits of the 'year of start' and 'year of completion' respectively, with one digit in each cell. The 'year of start' will correspond to the period during which the plinth work of the building started and 'year of completion' will relate to the year

during which the dwelling unit was ready for possession. For example, if the plinth work of the dwelling unit started in 2006 and the dwelling unit was ready for possession in 2007, the entry in respect of item 5 will be '2006' and in respect of item 6, the entry will be '2007'.

4.5.6 Item 7: Condition of structure: Condition of structure refers to the physical condition of the structure of the house and will be recorded in appropriate code. The codes are:

good	1
satisfactory	2
bad	3

The code, relevant for the structure, will be determined as follows:

(i) if the structure does not require any immediate repairs, major or minor, it will be regarded as in 'good' condition and code 1 will be assigned,

(ii) if the structure requires immediate minor repairs but not major repairs, it will be regarded as in 'satisfactory' condition and code 2 will be recorded for such a structure,

(iii) if the structure of the building requires immediate major repairs without which it may be unsafe for habitation or requires to be demolished and rebuilt, it will be regarded as in 'bad' condition and code 3 will be recorded for such building,

4.5.7 Item 8: Drainage arrangement: A system for carrying off waste water and liquid waste of the house will be considered as drainage system. Information on the drainage system available to the house will be recorded against this item in codes. The codes are:

drainage system:

underground	1
covered pucca.....	2
open pucca	3
open katcha	4
no drainage	5

It may be noted that if no system exists to carry off the waste water of the house, but water flows down by its own gravity, in an unregulated manner, it will be considered as no drainage, and code 5 will be entered. In other cases, depending upon the drainage system available appropriate code will be given.

4.5.8 Item 9: Garbage collection arrangement: Garbage collection arrangement means the arrangement which usually exist to carry away the refuse and waste of households to some dumping place away from the residential areas. In some places, the public bodies collect the garbage from the premises of the household or from some fixed points in the locality where the residents put their garbage; in others, a body of residents themselves make the arrangement of carrying the garbage to the final dumping place away from residential areas without participation of any public body. In the first situation, code 1 will be recorded and code 2 in the second situation. Information on the arrangement

prevailing for the colony / locality of the dwelling unit will be obtained and entered in codes. The codes are:

collected:

by panchayet/municipality / corporation	1
by resident(s).....	2
others.....	9
no arrangement.....	3

4.5.9 Item 10: Animal shed: Information as to whether there is any animal shed or not in the building or in its neighbourhood will be recorded against this item in codes. The codes are:

<i>shed:</i> attached to the building	1
detached from the building.....	2
no animal shed	3

If there is no animal shed within 100 feet of the house (even on the adjacent plots) code 3 will be recorded. If there is an animal shed in the house or attached to the house code 1 will be recorded. If there is an animal shed within 100 feet of the house but not within / attached to it, code 2 will be recorded. The animals and / or the shed need not be owned or possessed by any household in the house. Animal shed for the purpose of this survey, is a structure where livestock (cattle, buffalo, horse, goat, pig, etc. but not poultry and pets) are sheltered.

4.5.10 Item 11: Whether experienced any flood during last 5 years?: If rain water during monsoon and / or water from sea, river, etc., enters into the ground floor of the house, or though water did not enter the house but the house was surrounded by water for some days then the house is said to have experienced flood. The codes for this item are:

<i>yes:</i>	
from excessive rain...	1
river, sea, etc.....	2
no.....	3

In case both codes 1 and 2 are applicable, code 2 will be recorded.

4.5.11 Item 12: Approach road / lane / constructed path: Information as to whether the house has a direct opening to any road or not will be recorded against this item in codes. If from the plot of the house, one can approach a road / lane / constructed path without passing through another plot, the house is to be regarded as having a direct opening to a road. If, on the other hand, one has to pass through another plot to approach a road / lane / constructed path, the house is to be regarded as having no direct opening to a road. A road / lane / constructed path will be treated as having street lights if it has some lighting provision as on the date of survey. The codes are:

<i>direct opening to:</i>	motorable road / lane / constructed path with street light.....	1
	motorable road / lane / constructed path without street light...	2

other road / lane / constructed path with street light.....	3
other road / lane / constructed path without street light.....	4
no direct opening to road / lane / constructed path	5

4.6.0 Block 6: Particulars of the dwelling: In this block, details regarding the living accommodation occupied by the household will be collected. This block will be filled in for those households, who are living in houses, i.e., for those households with entry 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 9 in item 11 of block 3.

4.6.1 Item 1: Type of the dwelling: The information on the type of the dwelling unit will be entered against this item in codes. The codes are:

independent house.....	1
flat.....	2
others.....	9

Definition of independent house and flat is given in Chapter One. “Others” will include all other housing arrangements such as flat-like dwellings which are not self contained in respect of bath and toilet facilities. Huts/ tenements constructed of mud, bamboo, grass, leaves, reeds and other katcha materials, often found to be without self contained arrangement, will also be categorised as ‘others’.

4.6.2 Items 2 and 3: Number of rooms in the dwelling: Number of ‘living rooms’ will be recorded against item 2 and number of ‘other rooms’ will be recorded against item 3. Definition of ‘living room’ and ‘other rooms’ is given in Chapter One.

4.6.3 Items 4 to 8: Floor area of the dwelling (in square feet and in whole numbers): Information for each of these items is to be recorded in square feet and in whole numbers. The information on inside floor area (carpet area), i.e., the inside area of the floor excluding the area covered by the walls, of all “living rooms” taken together is to be recorded against item 4 and that of “other rooms” will be recorded against item 5. If a room is used both for business and residential purposes and the residential use is not very nominal, the total area of the room will be included for recording the entry. On the other hand, if only a portion of a room is used for residential purposes, only the area of that portion will be included for making the entry. The same procedure will be adopted in case of room being shared with another household. The floor area of the “covered veranda” and that of “uncovered veranda” is to be recorded against items 6 and 7, respectively. Definition of ‘covered’ and ‘uncovered’ verandas are described in Chapter One. Item 8 will be total of items 4 to 7.

4.6.4 Item 9: Ventilation of the dwelling unit: Information as to whether, in general, ventilation of the dwelling unit is good, satisfactory or bad will be collected and entered against this item in terms of codes. The codes are:

good	1
satisfactory	2
bad	3

It is to be noted that ventilation of all the rooms in the dwelling unit is to be considered. By ventilation it is generally meant *the extent to which the rooms are open to air and light*. For eliciting this information, the investigator will have to depend mainly on the judgement of the informant. A few guidelines are suggested below which may be helpful for the investigator for assessing the situation.

(i) If the majority of the rooms have two or more windows with arrangement for cross ventilation, the dwelling unit may be considered as having 'good' ventilation and code 1 will be recorded.

(ii) If the majority of the rooms have two or more windows without having any arrangement for cross ventilation or if majority of the living rooms have only a single window each with proper arrangement for cross ventilation, the dwelling unit will be considered to have a 'satisfactory' ventilation arrangement and in such cases code 2 will be recorded.

(iii) If the majority of the rooms have no window or have only one window each without any arrangement for cross ventilation, the dwelling unit will be considered to have 'bad' ventilation and code 3 will be entered.

It may, however, be noted that, in some cases, the rooms of the dwelling unit may be such that it does not have proper ventilation, as per the criteria mentioned above, but the rooms have proper air-conditioning facility. Such cases will also be considered as 'good' ventilation and code 1 will be entered.

4.6.5 Item 10: Total number of married couples in the household: For the purpose of this survey, 'married couple' will mean the couples either formed through marriage or through the system of live-together as reported by the informant. Total number of married couples in the household irrespective of their ages is to be recorded in this item. When both the husband and the wife (i.e., the male and female partners) are the household members, they should be considered for counting the number of married couples. If one of them is a household member and the other is not a household member, it should not be counted as a married couple. A man with two wives in a household will constitute two married couples. But one woman with two husbands in a household will form a single couple. If there is no married couple in the household entry will be '0'.

4.6.6 Item 11: Whether a separate room is available to each married couple?: Information as to whether each married couple of the household has a separate room for their use or not is to be ascertained and recorded against this item in terms of codes. Even if children of age 10 years or below are also using the room along with the couple, it is to be considered as a case of having a separate room for the couple. A couple living in single room-cum-kitchen will be considered to have a separate room. The codes to be used are:

yes	1
no	2
not applicable	9

Code 9 is admissible when there is no married couple in the household, i.e., if entry in item 10 is '0'.

4.6.7 Item 12: If code 2 in item 11, number of married couples not getting a separate room: If code 2 in item 11, number of married couples not getting a separate room is to be recorded against this item. If entry is either 1 or 9 in item 11, a dash (-) may be entered in this item.

4.6.8 Item 13: Kitchen type: Information about the kitchen facility in the dwelling unit will be recorded in codes. The codes are:

separate kitchen:

with water tap.....	1
without water tap	2
no separate kitchen	3

If the dwelling unit has a room used exclusively as a kitchen, it will be considered to have a separate kitchen. If such a kitchen has a water tap inside, code 1 will be recorded and code 2 will be recorded otherwise. If a room is used as kitchen-cum-store or kitchen-cum-dining room, then also the household will be considered to have a separate kitchen. In all other cases, code 3 will be recorded. If a room, with or without partition (which does not extend up to the ceiling), is shared as kitchen by two or more households, code 3 will be the appropriate entry against this item.

4.6.9 Items 14 to 16: Floor, wall and roof type: Information on the basic building materials with which the floor, walls and roof of the dwelling unit are constructed will be collected and recorded in codes against items 14, 15 and 16, respectively. The codes are:

floor type:

mud	1
bamboo / log	2
wood / plank	3
brick / limestone / stone ...	4
cement	5
mosaic / tiles	6
others	9

wall type:

grass / straw / leaves / reeds / bamboo, etc.	1
mud (with / without bamboo) / unburnt brick ...	2
canvas / cloth	3
other katcha	4
timber	5
burnt brick / stone / limestone	6
iron or other metal sheet	7
cement/ RBC/ RCC	8
other pucca	9

roof type:

grass / straw / leaves / reeds / bamboo, etc.	1
mud / unburnt brick	2
canvas / cloth	3
other katcha	4
tiles / slate	5
burnt brick / stone / limestone	6
iron / zinc / other metal sheet /asbestos sheet ..	7
cement / RBC / RCC	8
other pucca	9

When the basic building materials used are different for different walls, the materials used for **major portion** of wall area of the dwelling will be the wall type. For determining the wall type, only the walls of the dwelling will be considered. Roof / floor type will also be determined on the basis of the material used for major portion of roof / floor area of the dwelling, if the different portions of the roof / floor are made of different building materials. For determining the material of the roof, the material of which the outer roof exposed to the weather (and not the ceiling) is made, i.e., tiles, thatch, corrugated iron, zinc or asbestos sheet, etc., will be considered. However, if the roof is mainly made of bricks, tiles, stone, etc., with the mud, cement or lime plaster exposed to the sky, the material of roof will not be mud, cement, lime, etc. but it will be brick, tile, stone, etc. which constituted the fabric of the roof.

4.6.10 **Item 17: Monthly rent (Rs.) (payable approach):** This item will be filled in for all dwellings with code 3, 4, or 5 against item 11 of block 3. For other households, a ‘-’ mark may be put against this item. The actual amount (in whole number of Rupees) payable per month by the household will be recorded against this item. If the household has paid some amount initially which is adjusted in the monthly rent, the amount adjusted in each month shall also be included in the monthly rent. If the household is residing in employer’s quarters, (i.e., for those with code 3 against item 11 of block 3), the amount deducted from the salary of the household member to whom the quarter is allotted along with the house rent allowance the person might have received if he/she had not been provided the accommodation, will be the rent of the dwelling unit. Rent does not include any salami/pugree or any kind of cess payable to local bodies or government or monthly maintenance charges payable to the co-operative society, etc.

4.7.0 **Block 7: Particulars of construction and repair for residential purpose:** The main objective of this block is to collect information like type of construction, floor area, expenditure incurred, source of finance, etc., in respect of constructions undertaken, either at the present premises or elsewhere, during the last 365 days. This apart, number of constructed houses/flats purchased first-hand during the last 365 days will be recorded separately along with their floor area and cost of acquiring them. For collecting information in this block, all constructions undertaken during the last 365 days may be grouped into two categories:

- (i) those undertaken by the **household** for residential and/or non-residential purposes, and
- (ii) those undertaken by the **non-household entities** (enterprises/institutions) for residential and/or non-residential purposes.

Constructions that are to be covered for recording relevant information in this block are:

- (A) those undertaken **by the households for residential purposes**, and
- (B) those which are **purchased first-hand from the non-household entities (enterprises/institutions)** by the household for residential purposes, during the last 365 days.

For category (A), the constructions would mean:

- preparation of site (including demolition of existing structure, sheds, etc., if any; leveling of land, digging of earth, etc.) to start plinth work
- construction of new residential building,
- construction relating to addition of floor space,
- construction relating to alteration, improvement and major repair of the existing residential building.

This category will include:

- construction undertaken (**completed and in-progress**) during the last 365 days by the sample household **for residential purposes**,
- constructions irrespective of whether lying vacant or occupied,
- construction relating only to the residential part of the constructions if construction undertaken is not solely for residential purpose,
- constructions which are undertaken within the geographical boundary of the Indian Union.

This will exclude:

- routine repairs and maintenance of the structure such as whitewashing, painting, etc.,
- constructions undertaken as an entrepreneurial activity.

4.7.0.1 The constructions of category (B) are generally the housing units (ready built houses/flat) constructed by the enterprises/institutions that are purchased first-hand by the sample household for residential purposes during the last 365 days. Such constructions might have been undertaken at any time in the past provided they have not been sold earlier for any purpose (residential and/or non-residential). It may be noted that residential units acquired by the households by ways other than purchase, say, acquired free from non-household entities, will also be considered for making entries in items 28 to 30.

4.7.0.2 Detailed information on constructions undertaken, during the last 365 days, by the sample household for residential purposes will be collected in items 4 to 27,

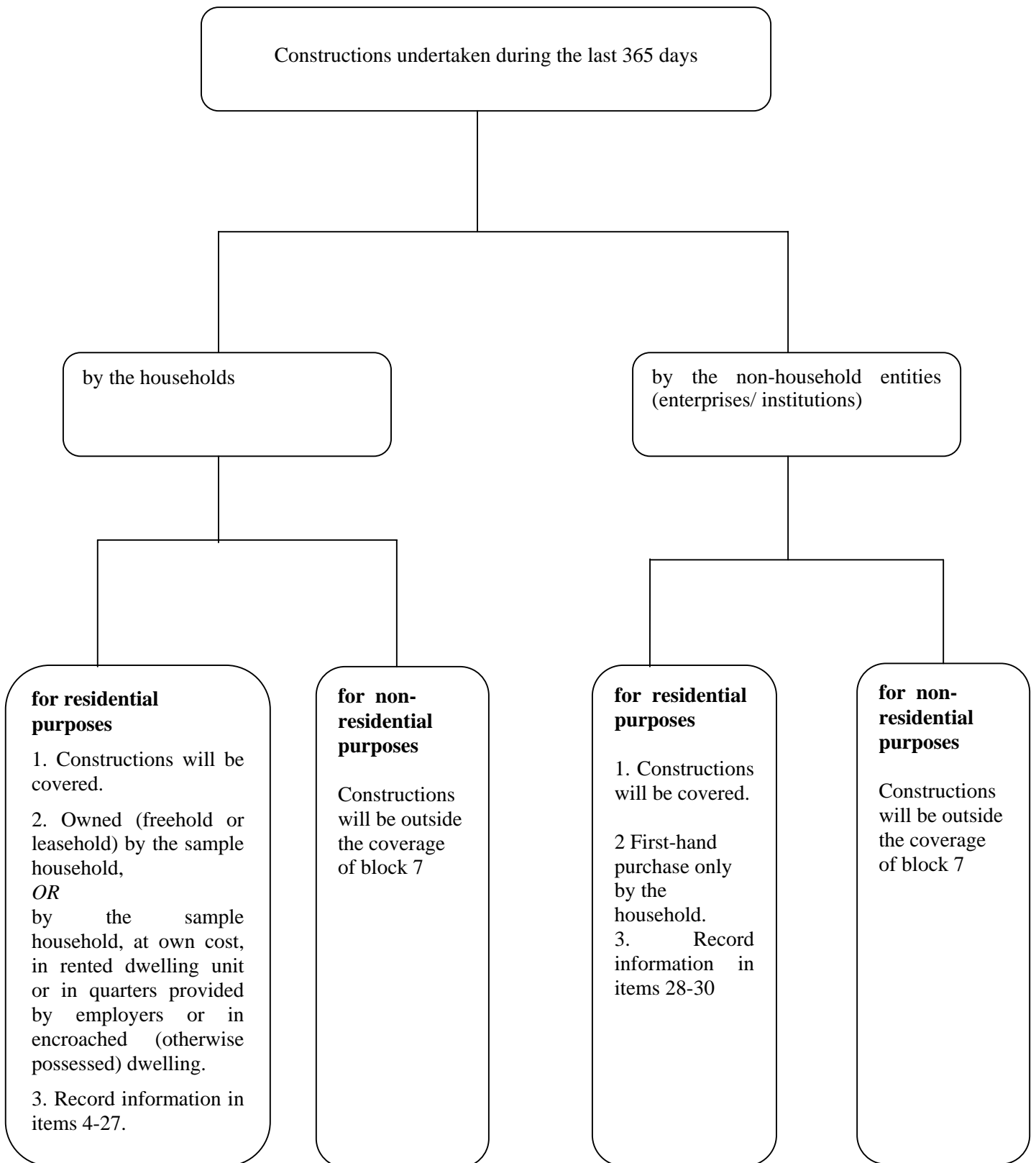
separately for each construction. All the constructions undertaken by the sample households either at the 'present premises' or 'elsewhere' will be considered. It may be noted that information recorded would relate only to the residential part of the constructions in case of construction undertaken partly for residential and partly for non-residential purpose. Further, the constructions done as an entrepreneurial activity are not to be considered as constructions by the household and therefore, will not feature against items 4 to 27.

4.7.0.3 The cost of constructions undertaken during the reference period and all other particulars relating to them will be best known to the owners of the dwelling units. Thus, information relating to the constructions that are owned (freehold or leasehold) by the sample household, whether undertaken at its present premises or elsewhere, will only be collected and recorded against items 4 to 27. However, as an exception, if repair or construction work is undertaken by the sample household, at own cost, in rented dwelling unit or in quarters provided by employers or in encroached (otherwise possessed) dwelling, it will be considered in this block and recorded against the sample household (see Chart-1 for coverage of Block 7).

4.7.0.4 Note that if the sample household, instead of itself constructing the residential unit, has purchased first-hand a constructed house / flat, this will not be considered as a construction undertaken by the household for recording information in items 4 to 27. Information in this regard will only be recorded in items 28 to 30 of this block.

4.7.0.5 In Block 7, provision has been made to record the details of six constructions undertaken by the sample household during the last 365 days. For this purpose two sheets (pages), of Block 7, have been attached in the schedule, with continuous 'srl. no. of constructions'. In the first sheet (page) of Block 7, provision has been made to record the details of three constructions and in the second sheet (page) there is provision to record the details of three constructions. Since information in respect of items 1 and 2 will be recorded only once for the household in the first sheet (page) of Block 7 and is not required to be repeated in the second sheet, the applicable columns in respect of srl. numbers 1 and 2 (for items 1 and 2 respectively), have been shaded. Similarly, items 28 to 30 have been deleted from the second sheet, since information for these items will be collected only once from the sample household and will be recorded in items 28 to 30 of the first sheet. It is expected that for most of the sample households, the number of constructions undertaken will not exceed six. However, if a particular sample household undertakes more than six constructions, additional sheet (s) for Block 7 (i.e., second sheet of Block 7) may be attached and continuous serial number may be given against item 3 (srl. no. of constructions) of attached sheet of this block. Number of additional sheet(s) attached (for Block 7) may be reported in item 3 of Block 2.

Chart-1



4.7.1 Item 1: Number of constructions undertaken during last 365 days: The number of constructions undertaken by the sample household for residential purposes during the last 365 days is to be entered against this item. This will include the constructions which started earlier, but the activity continued during the last 365 days, as well as the constructions initiated during the last 365 days (whether completed or not). If entry is '0' in col. (3) of item 1, items 2, 4 to 27 will be left blank.

4.7.2 Item 2: Number of constructions completed during the last 365 days: In column 3, the total number of constructions completed by the sample household during the last 365 days will be entered. A new construction will be considered as 'completed' if it is considered by its owner as completed and ready for its first occupation. Issuing of 'completion certificate' from any authority will not be a pre-requisite for the building to be considered as 'completed'. In the case of addition, alteration and improvement, a construction will be considered as 'completed' if the owner feels so.

4.7.3 Item 3: Srl. no. of constructions: Six serial numbers, to record details of six constructions in the two sheets of Block 7, are already printed. Each column relates to one construction and information in items 4 to 27 is to be collected separately for each construction. While recording the constructions, all the constructions undertaken 'at the present premises' will be listed first, followed by those undertaken at 'elsewhere'. If a sample household undertook more than six constructions, additional sheet (second sheet) of Block 7 may be attached and continuous serial number, starting from 7 may be given against item 3 (srl. no. of constructions). Number of additional sheets attached (for Block 7) may be reported in item 3 of Block 2.

4.7.4 Item 4: Place of construction: The place where the sample household has undertaken the constructions during the last 365 days may be reported for each construction. If the construction is undertaken at the 'present premises' where the household is residing, code 1 will be entered and if the construction is undertaken at 'elsewhere', code 2 will be entered..

4.7.5 Item 5: Type of construction: Against item 5, type of construction will be recorded in codes. The codes are:

new building	1
addition to floor space	2
alteration/improvement/major repair.....	3

For construction of an entirely new building code 1 will be recorded. If extension of existing building results in the increase of floor area, it is to be considered as addition to floor area and code 2 will be recorded for such construction. Any type of remodelling, renovation or major repair work is to be treated as alteration/improvement/major repair and code 3 will be recorded for such constructions.

4.7.6 Item 6: Whether construction is complete as on the date of survey?: If the construction is 'complete' on the date of survey, code 1 will be recorded, otherwise code 2 will be recorded.

4.7.7 Items 7 to 9: These items are to be filled in if code in item 6 is 1, i.e., if the construction is complete as on the date of survey. In the case of in-progress constructions, information relating to these items will not be collected and, therefore, a ‘-’ will be given against these items.

4.7.7.1 Item 7: Type of structure: The type of structure, i.e., whether the structure constructed is pucca, semi-pucca or katcha will be recorded against this item in terms of codes for each completed construction. If a building consists of different types of structure, the determination of its type will be based on the type of structure that covers major floor area. The codes are:

pucca	1
semi-pucca	2
katcha	3

Katcha includes both serviceable katcha and unserviceable katcha. Pucca, semi-pucca and katcha structures are defined in Chapter One.

4.7.7.2 Items 8 & 9: If the completed constructions are of any of the following two types viz., new building or addition to floor space, items 8 and 9 will be filled in. Or in other words, if entry in item 6 is 1 along with codes 1 or 2 in item 5, items 8 and 9 will be filled in.

4.7.7.3 Item 8: Floor area ((in sq. ft. and in whole numbers): Floor area refers to the carpet area of the building. It includes the area of room, kitchen, etc., but excludes uncovered area both inside and outside the structure; e.g., terrace, stairs, stairways, landing, etc. Floor area will be recorded in this item in square feet and in whole numbers.

4.7.7.4 Item 9: No. of dwelling units: The number of dwelling units in the new building or the number of dwelling units in which additional floor space has been constructed will be recorded against this item in the relevant column(s). Sometimes, it may be difficult to arrive at the number of dwelling units, especially in the case of new buildings which are not yet occupied by the households. In such situations, the number of dwelling units for which provision has been made in the building, as adjudged and reported by the informant, will be recorded in this item.

4.7.8 Item 10: Total cost of construction (Rs.): Costs incurred up to the date of survey (amount paid and payable) for each of the constructions undertaken will be recorded separately in whole number of rupees against this item. For the constructions that have been completed during the last 365 days, the total cost for each such construction will be considered. For the constructions that are in progress, the total cost of the constructions up to the date of survey will be entered in the relevant columns. While making the entries in this item, the following may be kept in mind:

- The cost of purchase or procurement of only that part of the total materials, labour and services hired (i.e., expenditure incurred including payment due on account of professional and personal services, municipal and other taxes and fees, etc. for construction) which have actually been utilised in the construction will be considered for making entries.

- Household labour will be evaluated at the wage rate prevailing at the time of construction.
- Materials supplied from home will be evaluated at the ex-farm/ex-factory price prevailing at the time of its use.
- For materials obtained as free collection and used in the construction, only transport charges and the related hired and household labour will be evaluated and recorded.
- Materials received as gifts or in the form of subsidies will be evaluated at the local retail price.
- The total cost will also include the cost of site preparation, such as demolition of the existing structure, development of land, etc.
- The value of land on which the construction is made will not be included in the cost.
- The expenditure incurred on routine repairs and maintenance of the structure such as white washing, painting, etc. will not be included in the cost.

4.7.9 Item 11 to 22: Amount (Rs.) financed for construction from different sources:

Total cost of construction recorded in item 10 may be financed by the households from different sources. In items 11 to 21, provisions have been made to record, for each of the constructions, amount financed from different sources for the total cost of construction. Amount financed, for the total cost of construction, will include both cash and kind, as well as household labour and/or material, and gifts received in kind. Household labour and materials supplied from home or gifts received in kind from others and used for construction will be evaluated in the same manner as described in para. 4.7.8. Material received from the institutional agencies in the form of subsidy and used in the construction work, will also be considered and the entries will be made against the respective institutional agencies, from which such materials have been received. Eleven different sources are listed and the amount financed from each of the sources for the construction will be recorded against the different sources in whole number of rupees. Note that total cost of construction recorded against item 10 will match with that recorded against item 22 for each construction. The following sources have been considered for recording sources of finance for constructions:

item no	description of the source
11.	own labour and/or material (incl. gifts received in kind)
12.	finance from own source (savings, sale of assets, received as gifts, etc.)
institutional agencies	
13.	government
14.	commercial bank including regional rural bank, co-operative society/bank
15.	insurance
16.	provident fund (advance/loan)
17.	financial corporation/institution
18.	other institutional agencies
non-institutional agencies	
19.	money lender
20.	friends and relatives
21.	other non-institutional agencies
22.	total (sum of items 11 to 21)

Descriptions of the different sources listed above is given below:

a) Own labour and/or material (incl. gifts received in kind): This will include the household labour and/or materials supplied from home and materials received as gifts from other households and used in the construction. Though this will not include materials used from free collection, the transport charges and the related hired and household labour associated with such free collection will be evaluated and recorded. Besides, materials supplied from home will be included here, which will be evaluated at the ex-farm/ex-factory price. Materials received as gifts from other households will be evaluated at the local retail price for recording entry. Materials may be received, sometimes, from friends and relatives or other non-institutional agencies as gifts. These will be considered against this item. However, if material is received from the institutional agencies in the form of subsidy and used in the construction work, the entries will be made against the respective institutional agencies, from which such material has been received.

b) Finance from own source (savings, sale of assets, received as gifts, etc.): The amount to be entered against this item relates to the savings of the different members of the household. This will also include non-refundable amount drawn by some of the household members from provident fund account, i.e., final withdrawal or part withdrawal. Besides, money received as gifts from friends or relatives and amount received from sale of assets and used in the construction work will also be included in this item.

Institutional Agencies

c) Government: When money (including subsidy received either in cash or kind) is received from the central or state governments, to finance the construction, these will be considered here.

d) Commercial Banks including regional rural bank, cooperative society/bank: Amount spent on construction out of money (including subsidy received either in cash or kind) taken from commercial banks, including nationalised banks, regional rural banks, State Bank of India and its associates like State Bank of Rajasthan, State Bank of Mysore, etc., and foreign commercial banks operating in India may be considered here. Similarly, money may be obtained from agencies such as cooperative society/banks, like district or central cooperative banks or other types of cooperative societies, etc. Such amount will also be considered here.

e) Insurance: All loans taken from Life Insurance Corporation, Postal Life Insurance and other insurance funds may be considered to be loans taken from 'insurance'.

f) Provident Fund: Refundable advance/loans taken from a Provident Fund account, such as a Contributory Provident Fund, a General Provident Fund, a Public Provident Fund or any other provident fund in the public/private sector offices and companies, by the employees of the respective concerns, or account holders in case of a Public Provident Fund, will be classified in 'Provident Fund'.

g) Financial Corporations/ Institutions: Institutions such as Housing Development Finance Corporation Limited (HDFC), Housing and Urban Development Corporation Limited (HUDCO), etc., may be considered here.

h) Other Institutional Agencies: Amount raised by the households from financial institutions other than those listed above have been treated as loans from 'Other Institutional Agencies'.

Non-institutional Agencies

i) Money lender: Persons who lend money on interest will be considered as money lenders.

j) Friends and relatives: Friends and relatives in this particular context are those who lend money free of interest. A friend or relative who charges interest for any loan advanced will be regarded as money lender.

k) Others: Any non-institutional credit agency not covered above has been considered under this category.

4.7.10 Item 22: Total (sum of items 11 to 21): In item 22, sum of the entries in items 11 to 21 is to be entered. Note that this should match with the entry made against item 10 separately for each construction.

4.7.11 Items 23 to 27: Cost of construction during last 365 days (Rs): Expenditure incurred on the constructions during the last 365 days will be recorded against these items, separately for each construction with the following break-up:

**in items 23 and 24: material – separately for pucca and others,
in item 25: labour, and
in item 26: others (service charges, etc.).**

It may be noted that the cost of purchase or procurement of only that part of the total materials, labour (household labour will be evaluated at the wage rate prevailing at the time of construction) and services hired (i.e., expenditure incurred including payment due on account of professional and personal services, municipal and other taxes and fees, etc. for construction) which have actually been utilised in the construction during the last 365 days will be considered for making entries in these items. As such there must be positive entry in at least one of the items 23 to 26 for each of the constructions undertaken during the last 365 days. The total of the expenditure, recorded in items 23 to 26 will be recorded against item 27. Household labour and material supplied from own source and materials received as gifts will also be included in the respective items. Expenditure relating to the material and labour purchased, hired or procured but not used in the construction during the last 365 days will not be taken into account for filling in this item. It may be noted that, service charges, i.e., expenditure incurred (including payments due) on account of professional and personal services, municipal and other taxes and fees if any for construction, rental and hire charges of equipment used for construction will be included with 'others'.

4.7.12 Items 28 to 30: First-hand purchase of constructed house / flat at the present premises and elsewhere during the last 365 days: In items 28 to 30 details on the first-hand purchase of constructed house/flat during the last 365 days will be recorded. It may be noted that if a household acquired residential units by ways other than purchase, say

acquired free from non-household entities, these will also be considered for making entries in items 28 to 30.

4.7.12.1 Item 28: Number of residential unit acquired during last 365 days: In this item, the total number of residential unit (s), the sample household has acquired during the last 365 days will be entered. If the household has not acquired any residential unit during the last 365 days, zero (0) may be entered in this item.

4.7.12.2 Items 29 and 30: Items 29 and 30 will be filled in if entry in item 28 is greater than zero (0).

4.7.12.3 Item 29: If entry > 0 in item 28, total floor area (in square feet and in whole numbers): In this item, total floor area of all the residential units acquired during the last 365 days will be entered in square feet. If entry in item 28 is 0, a dash (-) may be put in this item.

4.7.12.4 Item 30: Total expenditure incurred for residential unit acquired during last 365 days (Rs.): If the sample household did not carry out the construction itself but acquired the residential units during the last 365 days, total expenditure for that residential unit will be considered here. It may be noted that only the first-hand purchase of the residential units are to be considered. If the cost of the land is paid separately, then the amount paid for the land will not be considered for recording the total expenditure. But if it cannot be separated, the total would include the cost of the land. It may be noted that, if some amount is due to be paid but the residential unit has been acquired during the last 365 days, the amount paid and the amount payable will be added up and entered in this item. If the sample household acquired residential units by ways other than purchase during the reference period, say acquired free from non-household entities, the market value of the residential unit will be considered for making entry in item 30.

4.7.13 Treatment of some cases of constructions in Block 7

i) In case a construction has been undertaken jointly by Household A and Household B for residential purposes during the reference period, particulars of the construction will be recorded in items 4 to 27 according to the share of the sample household.

ii) Information will be collected only for the residential part (of the floor area) of the construction if it is partly for residential and partly for non-residential purpose. In case a part (floor area) is used for both residential and non-residential purposes, the entire area will be considered.

iii) In some cases, especially in the rural areas, the accommodation availed of by a household (dwelling unit) may be such that some of the rooms or even structures, which are used by the sample household for living purposes, are at a distance (may be at a different premises) from the remaining rooms used by the household for living purposes. These rooms are generally used as living purposes by the household members because of shortage of space. The dwelling unit for the sample household will constitute of all such rooms and structures also.

iv) In case a construction has been undertaken by Household A during the reference period and used by it for some time, and then sold to Household B for residential use during the reference period, the particulars of construction will be recorded in items 4 to 27 for Household A only. The purchase of constructed residential unit by Household B in

this case will be treated as second-hand purchase and will not feature anywhere in this block.

v) In case a construction has been undertaken by Household A and sold outright to Household B during the reference period, it will be treated as an entrepreneurial activity of Household A. In such cases, the particulars of construction will be recorded in items 28 to 30 (not in items 4 to 27) of Household B if purchased for residential purposes during the reference period.

vi) In case a construction has been undertaken by Household A and gifted outright to Household B for residential use during the reference period, the particulars of construction will be recorded in items 4 to 27 for Household A only.

vii) In case a construction has been undertaken by non-household entity and given free to Household B for residential use during the reference period, the particulars of construction will be recorded in items 28 to 30 for Household B only if used for residential purpose.

viii) A construction undertaken by the sample household for residential purpose during the reference period, even if washed away by flood or destroyed due to earthquake, etc., will be considered and particulars of such constructions will be recorded in items 4 to 27 against the relevant households.

4.8.0 Block 8: Remarks by investigator/ senior investigator: Any relevant remarks relating to the problems encountered in collecting the data will be recorded in this block by the investigator/ senior investigator. If the investigator/ senior investigator feels that certain information given by the informant is of doubtful nature, it may also be indicated with comments, if any. Any other comment, which may help to make proper assessment of the entries made in the schedule, may also be recorded here.

4.9.0 Block 9: Comments by superintendent / senior superintendent: The superintendent / senior superintendent should note their views on any aspect pertaining to the characteristics under enquiry in this schedule. They should particularly highlight the inconsistent data, if any, recorded in the schedule giving possible reason for such entries.

4.10.0 Block 10: Comments by other supervisory officer: The views of other supervisory officer on any aspect pertaining to the characteristics under enquiry in this schedule relating to the household may be recorded in this block.

Chapter Five

Schedule 0.21: Particulars of Slum

5.0 **Introduction:** The first nationwide survey on the 'economic condition of slum dwellers in urban cities' was conducted by the NSSO in its 31st round (July 1976 - June 1977). The survey was restricted to (i) all the 'Class I' towns having 1971 census population one lakh or more and (ii) two 'Class II' towns, viz. Shillong and Pondicherry. The next survey on slum dwellers was carried out in the 49th round (January – June 1993), which covered rural as well as urban areas. After a gap of nearly ten years, the third survey was conducted in the 58th round (July-December 2002), covering only the urban slums. In the present round also, the survey is restricted to urban slums only.

5.0.0 Schedule 0.21 has been framed to collect information on the present condition of the slums and on the change in the condition of some facilities available therein. The schedule is to be canvassed for each surveyed urban block having slum(s). Thus the schedule will be canvassed in the urban sector only.

5.0.1 Information on each slum, notified or non-notified, found in the entire selected first stage unit (FSU) will be collected even if sub-block formation has been resorted to. In some cases, the slum may cover such a large area that it cuts across more than one FSU, and the selected FSU is part of the slum. In such cases, all the slum particulars recorded would relate to only that part of the slum, which falls in the selected FSU. However, if the FSU contains a part of a notified slum with at least 20 households, then the part of the slum falling in the FSU will be regarded as a notified slum and the schedule will be canvassed accordingly.

5.0.2 This chapter gives detailed instructions for filling up Schedule 0.21. Concepts and definitions relating to this schedule have been discussed in Chapter One. However, concepts specific to Schedule 0.21 have been discussed in this chapter wherever necessary along with the instructions for specific items.

5.0.3 Structure of the schedule

5.0.3.0 Schedule 0.21 consists of the following eight blocks.

Block 0: descriptive identification of sample FSU (Urban)

Block 1: identification of sample FSU (Urban)

Block 2: particulars of field operations

Block 3: particulars about the slum

Block 4: change in the condition of the slum during the last 5 years

Block 5: remarks by investigator/senior investigator

Block 6: comments by superintendent/senior superintendent

Block 7: comments by other supervisory officer(s)

Blocks 0 and 1 are meant to record the identification particulars of the selected urban FSU. Blocks 2, 5, 6 and 7 are for reporting particulars of field operations, remarks by the investigator/senior investigator, comments by superintendent/senior superintendent and

comments by other supervisory officer(s). In Blocks 3 and 4, data are to be recorded for each slum inside the selected FSU.

5.0.3.1 Some general features about the slum will be recorded in Block 3. Information relating to the area where the slum is located, condition of the road / lane / constructed path within and surrounding the slum, and basic amenities like electricity, drinking water, sewerage, drainage, garbage disposal, etc. will be collected in this block. In Block 4, information will be collected on improvement/change, if any, in the condition of some amenities of the slum during the last 5 years.

5.0.4 Sample Type (Central/ State)

5.0.4.0 At the top right corner of the first page of Schedule 0.21, a box for indicating the type of sample (Central / State) to which the FSU belongs is given. A tick mark (✓) will be put against the appropriate item in the box.

5.0.5 Block 0: Descriptive identification of sample FSU (Urban)

5.0.5.0 This block has been designed to record the descriptive identification of the sample FSU. There are 5 items in the block. The items are self-explanatory.

5.1 Block 1: Identification of sample FSU (Urban)

5.1.0 Block 1 has 13 items. Most of the items of this block are coded. The code lists are provided either with the items or at the bottom of the block.

5.1.1 **Items 1 to 12:** These items will be copied from Block 1 of Schedule 0.0 except for items 2, 3 and 5, which are already printed in the schedule.

5.1.2 **Item 13: no. of slums in the FSU (Urban):** The total number of slums, notified and non-notified, found in the sample FSU will be recorded against this item.

5.2 Block 2: Particulars of field operations

5.2.0 The items in this block are self-explanatory. While making entries against item 4 of this block, care is to be taken to record the actual time taken in canvassing the schedule in whole number of minutes (**not** hours). This will not include the time taken by the investigator to finalise the schedule. Dates of survey/inspection, etc. should be recorded in six digits – 2 digits each for day, month and year, in that order.

5.2.1 **Item 5: whether schedule contains remarks?(yes-1, no-2):** In blocks 5, 6 and 7, remarks of (i) investigator/ senior investigator, (ii) superintendent / senior superintendent and (iii) other supervisory officer are to be recorded when some difficulty is encountered in collection of data or if some of the items of information seem doubtful in nature or are unusual and require explanation. Besides the remarks blocks, remarks are sometimes also recorded in the available blank spaces in the schedules. Entry will be 1 in column 3/4/5 of item 5 if relevant remarks are recorded, else entry will be 2. If remarks have been recorded in block 5, entry will be 1 against column 3, otherwise entry will be 2. Similarly, entry will be 1 in column 4, if remarks are made in blocks 6 or 7. If remarks are recorded elsewhere in the schedule, entry will be 1 in column 5; else entry in column 5 will be 2.

5.3 Block 3: Particulars about the slum

5.3.0 Some broad information about the slum(s) falling within the entire selected UFS block will be recorded in this block. Provision has been made in Block 3 to collect information on up to five different slums. One column is to be filled in for each slum of an FSU. If there are more than five slums in an FSU, additional sheets of Block 3 are to be used. The information is to be collected by interviewing one or more knowledgeable persons. Information for most of the items is to be recorded in code. If more than one code is applicable for any particular item, then the code which applies to the major part of the slum will be recorded.

5.3.1 **Item 1: serial number of the slum in the block:** The serial number of the slum for which information is being collected in items 2 to 26 is to be recorded. The serial number (up to five slums in a sample FSU) is printed in the schedule. **Only a tick (✓) mark to be given against the corresponding serial number.** Each column corresponding to a serial number is meant for recording the particulars of one slum. *If there is more than one slum, the investigator may list the slums in any order. However, same order should be followed in both Block 3 and Block 4.*

5.3.2 **Item 2: approximate number of households in the slum:** The number of households residing in the slum as ascertained from local enquiry will be recorded in this item. For definition of household, please refer to Chapter One.

5.3.3 **Item 3: approximate area of the slum:** The approximate area in hectares of the slum will be ascertained by the investigator and recorded against this item in code. The class intervals are in hectares. The codes are:

Class interval in hectare:

less than 0.05	1
0.05 to 1.00	2
1.00 to 2.00	3
2.00 to 3.00	4
3.00 to 4.00	5
4.00 to 6.00	6
6.00 to 8.00	7
8.00 or more	8

(1 acre \approx 0.4047 hectare and 0.01 hectare = 100 sq. metre)

5.3.4 **Item 4: is the slum a notified one?** Whether the slum is a notified one or not will have to be ascertained from the local municipality or other appropriate authorities. Code 1 is to be recorded if the slum is notified; else code 2 will be recorded.

5.3.5 **Item 5: if code 1 in item 4, year of notification:** If the slum is a notified one, the year of notification by the appropriate government agency, viz., municipality or any other appropriate authority, will be recorded against this item. All the four digits of the year are to be reported in the cell provided in this column. *If the year of notification is not known, it will be ascertained from the said government agency.*

5.3.6 **Item 6: ownership of the land where slum is located:** The ownership of the land under the slum will be recorded against this item in code. If there is more than one owner, the code that applies to the greater part of the area of the slum will be recorded. The codes are:

private.....	1
public: railway.....	2
local bodies...	3
others.....	9
not known.....	4

‘Public: others’ will include all other public-owned lands such as defence, airport, highways, etc. If different agencies own equal areas of the land under the slum, then the code will relate to the land where the majority of the households of the slum live.

5.3.7 Item 7: type of area surrounding the slum: The area type of the area surrounding the slum will be recorded in code, the codes being:

residential	1
industrial	2
commercial	3
slum(s).....	4
others	9

‘Area surrounding the slum’ refers to the area adjoining the major part of the border of the slum. Code 1 is meant for residential area not belonging to any slum, whereas code 4 is for slum area only.

5.3.8 Item 8: location of slum: The location of the slum refers to the part of the town in which the slum is situated. Fringe area is the border of the town. The codes to be used for this purpose are:

fringe area – 1, other area – 2.

5.3.9 Item 9: physical location of the slum: Physical location of the slum refers to the place where the slum is located. The codes are:

along <i>nallah</i> /drain ...	1
along railway line ...	2
river bank	3
river bed	4
others	9

5.3.10 Item 10: does the slum usually remain waterlogged during monsoon? Code 1 is to be recorded if the slum usually remains waterlogged during the monsoon and code 2, otherwise.

5.3.11 Item 11: does the approach road / lane / constructed path usually remain waterlogged in monsoon? Code 1 is to be recorded if the approach road/lane/constructed path to slum usually remains waterlogged for some days during monsoon and code 2, otherwise. Constructed path mentioned in items 11, 14 and 15 includes other path also.

5.3.12 Item 12: whether the slum has electricity: The information in appropriate codes is to be entered in this column. The codes are:

yes: for street lights only.....	1
for household use only.....	2
for street lights and household use.....	3
no.....	4

The slum will be regarded as having electricity for “street lights” even if street lights are there only on the boundary of the slum and even if lights are provided only at two or three important positions instead of along the streets of the slum.

5.3.13 **Item 13: type of structure of the majority of houses:** The information is to be recorded in terms of codes. The codes are:

pucca.....	1
semi-pucca.....	2
serviceable katcha.....	3
unserviceable katcha...	4
no structure.....	5

The definition of each type of structure is given in Chapter One.

5.3.14 **Item 14: type of road / lane / constructed path within the slum:** The information will relate to the road used by the slum dwellers as main thoroughfare. For a pucca road, code 1 will be recorded and for a katcha road code 2 will be recorded.

A road made of pucca materials like asphalt, cement, concrete, burnt bricks / tiles, stones, slabs, etc. will be treated as a pucca road. If a road is not made of pucca material, it is a katcha road.

If there is more than one road, the one used by most of the households will be considered. If some part of the road used is pucca and the remaining is katcha, then the type of road will be determined by considering the distance covered by each kind of road.

5.3.15 **Item 15: approach road / lane / constructed path to the slum:** The approach road will mean the main road leading to the slum area. If there is more than one approach road, the one which is used by the majority of the slum dwellers is to be considered. The construction type of the approach road or lane or constructed path for entrance to the slum area will be recorded in code. A motorable road is one which is wide enough for a motor car to pass through. The codes are:

motorable: pucca.....	1
katcha.....	2
non- motorable: pucca.....	3
katcha.....	4

5.3.16 **Item 16: for code 3 or code 4 in item 15, distance from the nearest motorable road:** This item will be filled if the approach road/lane/constructed path to the slum is non-motorable, that is, if entry in item 15 is 3 or 4. The distance from the nearest motorable road is to be recorded in code. The codes are:

less than 0.5 km ...	1
0.5 to 1 km	2
1 to 2 km	3
2 to 5 km	4
5 km & above	5

5.3.17 Item 17: major source of drinking water: Information about the major source of drinking water available to the slum dwellers will be ascertained and recorded in code. The relevant codes are:

tap	1
tube well / hand pump	2
well	3
others	9

If an arrangement is made by corporation, municipality or other local authorities or any private or public housing estate or agency to supply water through pipe then code 1 will be given. *In case of two or more sources, the major source is the one which is used by the majority of households.*

5.3.18 Item 18: latrine facility used by most of the residents: The latrine facility used by most of the slum dwellers is to be noted in code against this item. The codes are:

public / community latrine: service.....	01
pit.....	02
septic tank/ flush...	03
shared latrine: service.....	04
pit.....	05
septic tank/ flush...	06
own latrine: service.....	07
pit.....	08
septic tank/ flush...	10
other latrine.....	99
no latrine facility.....	11

In a few areas one may still come across latrines that are serviced by scavengers. These are called service latrines. A latrine connected to underground sewerage system is called flush system latrine. A latrine connected to underground septic chambers will be considered as a septic tank latrine. A latrine connected to a pit dug in the earth is a pit latrine.

5.3.19 Item 19: does the slum have underground sewerage system? An underground sewerage system contains underground pipes or conduits for carrying off drainage water, waste matter, discharge from water closets, etc. Code 1 is to be given if there is an underground sewerage system and code 2 otherwise.

5.3.20 Item 20: type of drainage system: A system, if any exists, for carrying off wastewater and liquid wastes of the area will be called a drainage system. Drainage could involve natural or artificial removal of surface and sub-surface water from a given area. However, if water flows down by its own weight under gravity, in an unregulated manner, then it will be a case of 'no drainage'. The type of drainage system existing in the slum area is to be entered in code against this item. The relevant codes are:

underground.....	1
covered pucca.....	2
open pucca.....	3
open katcha.....	4
no drainage system...	5

5.4 Block 4: Change in the condition of the slum during the last 5 years

5.4.1 In this block, provision has been made to record information for three slums. If there are more than three slums in the FSU, additional sheets for this block may be used and attached to the schedule. Compared to the earlier round, two additional items regarding information on any improvement /change in the condition during last five years with respect to a) “educational facility at primary level” and b) medical facility have been included. Improvement in educational facility at primary level includes setting up a primary school closer to the slum, increase in number of teachers or seats for students, etc. The improvement in medical facility includes setting up a hospital or, health centre, etc. regardless of whether it is private or public. *If the slum came up less than five years before the date of survey then the change over the period since the inception of the slum will be considered for filling this block.*

5.4.2 **Column (3) / (5) / (7): condition:** If some facilities existed earlier, it is to be ascertained from the informant whether there has been any improvement, deterioration or no change in the condition of the slum during the last 5 years. Such facilities could be with respect to roads (approach as well as those inside the slum), water supply, street light, electricity, latrine facility, sewerage, drainage system, garbage disposal, educational facility at primary level and medical facility. The relevant information will be recorded in codes under cols. (3) / (5) / (7). The codes to be used are:

improvement	1
no change	2
deterioration	3
neither existed earlier nor existing now	4

If some facilities did not exist 5 years earlier but came into existence since then, code ‘1’ will be recorded. If some facility was neither available 5 years before nor is available presently, code 4 will be recorded. If a facility is not available legally to the slum residents but is enjoyed by some of the households illegally, such as electricity obtained through illegal tapping, such a facility will not be considered ‘facility available’ and here also code ‘4’ is to be recorded.

5.4.3 **Column (4) / (6) / (8): source of improvement:** These columns will be filled in if there has been some improvement in the condition of the slum in regard to the items given in column 2, i.e. if code 1 is recorded under col. (3) / (5) / (7). In respect of each item, if any improvement has taken place during last 5 years, then the organisation/agency by which this improvement has been brought about will be ascertained and recorded in code. The codes to be used for cols. (4) / (6) / (8) for each one of the slums are:

Government	1
non-governmental organization	2
residents	3
others	9

If more than one source is considered to be responsible for the improvement, the source whose contribution is greatest will be identified and the code will be given accordingly.

5.5 **Block 5: Remarks by investigator/senior investigator:** Any relevant remarks relating to the problems encountered in collecting the data will be recorded in this block by the investigator/senior investigator. If the investigator/senior investigator feels that certain

information given by the informant is of doubtful nature, it may also be indicated with comments, if any. Any other comment, which may help to make proper assessment of the entries made in the schedule, may also be recorded here.

5.6 Block 6: Comments by superintendent/senior superintendent: This block will be used by superintendent/senior superintendent to record their comments and suggestions. They should particularly highlight the unusual entries or inconsistent data, if any, recorded in the schedule, giving possible reason for such entries.

5.7 Block 7: Comments by other supervisory officer(s): This block is meant for recording the views of other supervisory officer(s) on any aspect relating to the slum survey.

APPENDIX - I

LIST OF FOD SUB-REGIONS

regional office		sub-regional office			name of district & code			state/u.t. name & code	
sl. no	name (code)	sl. no.	name	code	sl. no.	name	code		
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)	
1.	Cuddapah (281)	1.	Cuddapah	2810	1.	Cuddapah	20	Andhra Pradesh (28)	
					2.	Chittoor	23		
					3.	Anantapur	22		
					4.	Guntur	17		
					5.	Kurnool	21		
					6.	Prakasam	18		
					7.	Nellore	19		
2.	Hyderabad (282)	6.	Hyderabad	2820	8.	Hyderabad	05	Andhra Pradesh (28)	
					9.	Rangareddi	06		
					10.	Mahbubnagar	07		
					11.	Nalgonda	08		
					12.	Karimnagar	03		
					13.	Medak	04		
					14.	Adilabad	01		
					15.	Nizamabad	02		
					16.	Warangal	09		
			17.	Khammam	10				
3.	Vijayawada (283)	10.	Vijayawada	2830	18.	West Godavari	15	Andhra Pradesh (28)	
					19.	Krishna	16		
					20.	East Godavari	14		
					21.	Yanam	01		Pondicherry (34)
					22.	Srikakulam	11		Andhra Pradesh (28)
			23.	Vizianagaram	12				
			24.	Visakhapatnam	13				
4.	Guwahati (181)	13.	Guwahati	1810	25.	Kokrajhar	01	Assam (18)	
					26.	Dhubri	02		
					27.	Goalpara	03		
					28.	Bongaigaon	04		
					29.	Barpeta	05		
					30.	Kamrup	06		
					31.	Nalbari	07		
					32.	Chirang	24		
					33.	Baksa	25		
					34.	Guwahati	26		
					35.	Karbi Anglong	19		
					36.	North Cachar Hills	20		
					37.	Cachar	21		
					38.	Karimganj	22		
					39.	Hailakandi	23		
		14.	Silchar	1811					

regional office		sub-regional office			name of district & code			state/u.t. name & code
sl. no	name (code)	sl. no.	name	code	sl. no.	name	code	
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)
5.	Dibrugarh (182)	15.	Dibrugarh	1820	40.	Tinsukia	14	Assam (18)
					41.	Dibrugarh	15	
		16.	Jorhat	1821	42.	Marigaon	09	
					43.	Nagaon	10	
					44.	Sibsagar	16	
					45.	Jorhat	17	
					46.	Golaghat	18	
		17.	Tezpur	1822	47.	Darrang	08	
					48.	Sonitpur	11	
					49.	Lakhimpur	12	
					50.	Dhemaji	13	
					51.	Udalguri	27	
6.	Muzaffarpur	18.	Muzaffarpur	1010	52.	Sheohar	03	Bihar (10)
					53.	Sitamarhi	04	
					54.	Muzaffarpur	14	
					55.	Saran	17	
					56.	Vaishali	18	
		19.	Darbhanga	1011	57.	Madhubani	05	
					58.	Darbhanga	13	
					59.	Samastipur	19	
					60.	Begusarai	20	
		20.	Motihari	1012	61.	Champan(W)	01	
					62.	Champan(E)	02	
					63.	Gopalganj	15	
					64.	Siwan	16	
		21.	Purnia	1013	65.	Supaul	06	
					66.	Araria	07	
					67.	Kishanganj	08	
					68.	Purnia	09	
					69.	Katihar	10	
					70.	Madhepura	11	
					71.	Saharsa	12	
					72.	Khagaria	21	
7.	Patna (102)	22.	Patna	1020	73.	Nalanda	27	Bihar (10)
					74.	Patna	28	
					75.	Bhojpur	29	
					76.	Buxar	30	
					77.	Kaimur (Bhabua)	31	
					78.	Rohtas	32	
		23.	Bhagalpur	1021	79.	Bhagalpur	22	
					80.	Banka	23	
					81.	Munger	24	
					82.	Lakhisarai	25	
					83.	Sheikhpura	26	
					84.	Jamui	37	

regional office		sub-regional office			name of district & code			state/u.t. name & code									
sl. no	name (code)	sl. no.	name	code	sl. no.	name	code										
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)									
7.	Patna (102)	24.	Gaya	1022	85.	Jehanabad	33	Bihar (10)									
					86.	Aurangabad	34										
					87.	Gaya	35										
					88.	Nawada	36										
					89.	Arwal	38										
8.	Raipur (221)	25.	Raipur	2210	90.	Raipur	11	Chhattisgarh (22)									
					91.	Mahasamund	12										
					92.	Dhamtari	13										
					93.	Kanker	14										
					94.	Bastar	15										
		26.	Ambikapur	2211	95.	Dantewada	16										
					96.	Koriya	01										
					97.	Surguja	02										
					98.	Jashpur	03										
					99.	Raigarh	04										
		27.	Bilaspur	2212	100.	Korba	05										
					101.	Janjgir-Champa	06										
					102.	Bilaspur	07										
					103.	Kawardha	08										
					104.	Rajnandgaon	09										
28.	Durg	2213	105.	Durg	10												
			106.	Gandhinagar	06		Gujarat (24)										
			107.	Ahmedabad	07												
			108.	Amreli	13												
			109.	Bhavnagar	14												
9.	Ahmedabad (241)	29.	Ahmedabad	2410	110.	Diu		01	Daman & Diu (25) Gujarat (24)								
					111.	Jamnagar	10										
					112.	Porbandar	11										
					113.	Rajkot	09										
					114.	Junagadh	12										
30.	Bhavnagar	2411	115.	Kachchh	01												
			116.	Surendranagar	08												
			31.	Jamnagar	2412		117.	Panch Mahals	17	Gujarat (24)							
							118.	Dohad	18								
							119.	Vadodara	19								
120.	Narmada	20															
121.	Bharuch	21															
32.	Rajkot	2413	122.	Bans Kantha	02												
			123.	Patan	03												
			124.	Mahesana	04												
			125.	Sabar Kantha	05												
			126.	Anand	15												
33.	Surendranaga	2414	127.	Kheda	16												
			10.	Baroda (242)	34.		Baroda	2420	127.	Kheda	16						
									35.	Mahesana	2421	127.	Kheda	16			
												36.	Nadiad	2422	127.	Kheda	16
															127.	Kheda	16
127.	Kheda	16															
127.	Kheda	16															
127.	Kheda	16															

regional office		sub-regional office			name of district & code			state/u.t. name & code
sl. no	name (code)	sl. no.	name	code	sl. no.	name	code	
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)
10.	Baroda (242)	37.	Surat	2423	128.	Surat	22	Gujarat
					129.	The Dangs	23	(24)
		38.	Valsad	2424	130.	Navsari	24	
					131.	Valsad	25	
					132.	Daman	02	Daman & Diu (25)
					133.	D & N Haveli	01	D & N Haveli (26)
11.	Panaji (301)	39.	Panaji	3010	134.	North Goa	01	Goa
					135.	South Goa	02	(30)
12.	Chandigarh (061)	40.	Chandigarh	0610	136.	Chandigarh	01	Chandigarh (04)
					137.	Panchkula	01	Haryana
		41.	Ambala	0611	138.	Ambala	02	(06)
					139.	Yamunanagar	03	
					140.	Kurukshetra	04	
					141.	Kaithal	05	
		42.	Bhiwani	0612	142.	Bhiwani	13	
					143.	Mahendragarh	16	
					144.	Rewari	17	
		43.	Hisar	0613	145.	Fatehabad	10	
					146.	Sirsa	11	
					147.	Hisar	12	
		44.	Karnal	0614	148.	Karnal	06	
					149.	Panipat	07	
					150.	Sonipat	08	
					151.	Jind	09	
		45.	Rohtak	0615	152.	Rohtak	14	
					153.	Jhajjar	15	
					154.	Gurgaon	18	
					155.	Faridabad	19	
					156.	Mewat	20	
13.	Shimla (021)	46.	Shimla	0210	157.	Solan	09	Himachal Pradesh
					158.	Sirmaur	10	(02)
					159.	Shimla	11	
					160.	Kinnaur	12	
		47.	Bilaspur	0211	161.	Hamirpur	06	
					162.	Una	07	
					163.	Bilaspur	08	
		48.	Dharamshala	0212	164.	Chamba	01	
					165.	Kangra	02	
		49.	Mandi	0213	166.	Lahul & Spiti	03	
					167.	Kullu	04	
					168.	Mandi	05	
14.	Jammu (011)	50.	Jammu	0110	169.	Punch	11	Jammu &
					170.	Rajauri	12	Kashmir (01)
					171.	Jammu	13	
					172.	Kathua	14	

regional office		sub-regional office			name of district & code			state/u.t. name & code			
sl. no	name (code)	sl. no.	name	code	sl. no.	name	code				
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)			
14.	Jammu (011)	51.	Udhampur	0111	173.	Doda	09	Jammu & Kashmir (01)			
					174.	Udhampur	10				
15.	Srinagar (012)	52.	Srinagar	0120	175.	Srinagar	03	Jammu & Kashmir (01)			
					176.	Badgam	04				
					177.	Leh (Ladakh)	07				
					178.	Kargil	08				
					53.	Anantnag	0121		179.	Pulwama	05
									180.	Anantnag	06
					54.	Baramula	0122		181.	Kupwara	01
									182.	Baramula	02
16.	Ranchi (201)	55.	Ranchi	2010	183.	Garhwa	01	Jharkhand (20)			
					184.	Palamu	02				
					185.	Ranchi	14				
					186.	Lohardaga	15				
					187.	Gumla	16				
					188.	Latehar	19				
					189.	Simdega	20				
					56.	Dumka	2011		190.	Deoghar	07
									191.	Godda	08
									192.	Sahibganj	09
									193.	Pakaur	10
					57.	Hazaribag	2012		194.	Dumka	11
									195.	Jamtara	21
									196.	Chatra	03
									197.	Hazaribag	04
									198.	Kodarma	05
									199.	Giridih	06
									200.	Dhanbad	12
									201.	Bokaro	13
					58.	Jamshedpur	2013		202.	Singhbhum(W)	17
203.	Singhbhum (E)	18									
204.	Saraikela	22									
17.	Bangalore (291)	59.	Bangalore	2910	205.	Tumkur	18	Karnataka (29)			
					206.	Kolar	19				
					207.	Bangalore	20				
					208.	Bangalore (Rural)	21				
					60.	Mangalore	2911		209.	Udupi	16
									210.	Dakshina Kannada	24
									211.	Kodagu	25
					61.	Mysore	2912		212.	Mandya	22
									213.	Mysore	26
									214.	Chamarajanagar	27

regional office		sub-regional office			name of district & code			state/u.t. name & code
sl. no	name (code)	sl. no.	name	code	sl. no.	name	code	
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)
17.	Bangalore (291)	62.	Shimoga	2913	215.	Shimoga	15	Karnataka (29)
					216.	Chikmagalur	17	
					217.	Hassan	23	
18.	Hubli (292)	63.	Hubli	2920	218.	Gadag	08	Karnataka (29)
					219.	Dharwad	09	
					220.	Uttara Kannada	10	
					221.	Haveri	11	
					222.	Davanagere	14	
		64.	Belgaum	2921	223.	Belgaum	01	
					224.	Bagalkot	02	
					225.	Bijapur	03	
		65.	Bellary	2922	226.	Raichur	06	
					227.	Koppal	07	
					228.	Bellary	12	
					229.	Chitradurga	13	
					230.	Gulbarga	04	
66.	Gulbarga	2923	231.	Bidar	05			
19.	Kozhikode(321)	67.	Kozhikode	3210	232.	Wayanad	03	Kerala (32)
					233.	Kozhikode	04	
					234.	Malappuram	05	
					235.	Mahe	03	
					236.	Kasaragod	01	
		68.	Kannur	3211	237.	Kannur	02	Pondicherry (34) Kerala (32)
					238.	Palakkad	06	
		69.	Palakkad	3212	239.	Thrissur	07	
		70.	Thrissur	3213				
20.	Thiruvananthapuram(322)	71.	Thiruvananthapuram	3220	240.	Thiruvananthapuram	14	Kerala (32)
					241.	Ernakulam	08	
					242.	Lakshadweep	01	
					243.	Alappuzha	11	
					244.	Pathanamthitta	12	
					245.	Kollam	13	
					246.	Idukki	09	
74.	Kottayam	3223	247.	Kottayam	10	Lakshadweep (31) Kerala (32)		
21.	Bhopal (231)	75.	Bhopal	2310	248.	Vidisha	31	Madhya Pradesh (23)
					249.	Bhopal	32	
					250.	Sehore	33	
					251.	Raisen	34	
					252.	Hoshangabad	37	
					253.	Betul	35	
					254.	Harda	36	
					255.	Chhindwara	43	
		76.	Chhindwara	2311	256.	Balaghat	45	

regional office		sub-regional office			name of district & code			state/u.t. name & code			
sl. no	name (code)	sl. no.	name	code	sl. no.	name	code				
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)			
21.	Bhopal (231)	77.	Indore	2312	257.	Dhar	25	Madhya Pradesh (23)			
					258.	Indore	26				
					259.	W. Nimar (Khargaoan)	27				
					260.	Barwani	28				
					261.	E. Nimar (Khandwa)	29				
					262.	Burhampur	48				
					263.	Sheopur	01				
22.	Gwalior (232)	79.	Gwalior	2320	264.	Morena	02	Madhya Pradesh (23)			
					265.	Bhind	03				
					266.	Gwalior	04				
					267.	Datia	05				
					268.	Neemuch	18				
					269.	Mandsaur	19				
					270.	Ratlam	20				
					271.	Jhabua	24				
					272.	Shivpuri	06				
					273.	Guna	07				
					274.	Tikamgarh	08				
					275.	Chhatarpur	09				
					276.	Ashoknagar	46				
					277.	Ujjain	21				
278.	Shajapur	22									
279.	Dewas	23									
280.	Rajgarh	30									
23.	Jabalpur (233)	83.	Jabalpur	2330	281.	Katni	38	Madhya Pradesh (23)			
					282.	Jabalpur	39				
					283.	Dindori	41				
					284.	Mandla	42				
					84.	Rewa	2331		285.	Panna	10
									286.	Satna	13
									287.	Rewa	14
									288.	Umariya	15
									289.	Shahdol	16
									290.	Sidhi	17
					85.	Sagar	2332		291.	Anuppur	47
									292.	Sagar	11
									293.	Damoh	12
									294.	Narsimhapur	40
295.	Seoni	44									
24.	Aurangabad	86.	Aurangabad	2710	296.	Jalna	18	Maharashtra (27)			
					297.	Aurangabad	19				
					298.	Bid	27				

regional office		sub-regional office			name of district & code			state/u.t. name & code			
sl. no	name (code)	sl. no.	name	code	sl. no.	name	code				
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)			
24.	Aurangabad	87.	Jalgaon	2711	299.	Nandurbar	01	Maharashtra (27)			
					300.	Dhule	02				
					301.	Jalgaon	03				
		88.	Nanded	2712	302.	Nanded	15				
					303.	Hingoli	16				
					304.	Parbhani	17				
89.	Nashik	2713	305.	Latur	28						
			306.	Nashik	20						
			25.	Mumbai (272)	90.	Mumbai	2720	307.	Mumbai Suburban	22	Maharashtra (27)
308.	Mumbai	23									
91.	Thane	2721						309.	Thane	21	
								310.	Raigarh	24	
26.	Nagpur (273)	92.	Nagpur	2730	311.	Wardha	08	Maharashtra (27)			
					312.	Nagpur	09				
					313.	Bhandara	10				
					314.	Gondiya	11				
					315.	Gadchiroli	12				
					316.	Chandrapur	13				
		93.	Akola	2731	317.	Buldana	04				
					318.	Akola	05				
					319.	Washim	06				
		94.	Amravati	2732	320.	Amravati	07				
					321.	Yavatmal	14				
27.	Pune (274)	95.	Pune	2740	322.	Pune	25	Maharashtra (27)			
					323.	Ahmadnagar	26				
					324.	Satara	31				
					325.	Ratnagiri	32				
					96.	Kolhapur	2741		326.	Sindhudurg	33
		327.	Kolhapur	34							
		328.	Sangli	35							
		97.	Solapur	2742	329.	Osmanabad	29				
					330.	Solapur	30				
		28.	Shillong (171)	98.	Shillong	1710	331.		West Khasi Hills	04	Meghalaya (17)
332.	Ri Bhoi						05				
333.	East Khasi Hills						06				
334.	Jaintia Hills						07				
99.	Tura						1711	335.	West Garo Hills	01	
								336.	East Garo Hills	02	
								337.	South Garo Hills	03	
100.	Agartala			1712	338.	West Tripura	01	Tripura (16)			
					339.	South Tripura	02				
					340.	Dhalai	03				

regional office		sub-regional office			name of district & code			state/u.t. name & code
sl. no	name (code)	sl. no.	name	code	sl. no.	name	code	
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)
					341.	North Tripura	04	
29.	Kohima (131)	101.	Kohima	1310	342.	Mon	01	Nagaland
					343.	Tuensang	02	(13)
					344.	Mokokchung	03	
					345.	Zunheboto	04	
					346.	Wokha	05	
					347.	Dimapur	06	
					348.	Kohima	07	
					349.	Phek	08	
					350.	Kiphire	09	
					351.	Longleng	10	
					352.	Peren	11	
		102.	Imphal	1311	353.	Senapati	01	Manipur
					354.	Tamenglong	02	(14)
					355.	Churachandpur	03	
					356.	Bishnupur	04	
					357.	Thoubal	05	
					358.	Imphal West	06	
					359.	Imphal East	07	
					360.	Ukhrul	08	
					361.	Chandel	09	
30.	Bhubaneswar (211)	103.	Bhubaneswar	2110	362.	Nayagarh	16	Orissa
					363.	Khordha	17	(21)
					364.	Puri	18	
		104.	Baripada	2111	365.	Kendujhar	06	
					366.	Mayurbhanj	07	
					367.	Baleshwar	08	
		105.	Berhampur	2112	368.	Ganjam	19	
					369.	Gajapati	20	
					370.	Kandhamal	21	
					371.	Baudh	22	
		106.	Cuttack	2113	372.	Bhadrak	09	
					373.	Kendrapara	10	
					374.	Jagatsinghapur	11	
					375.	Cuttack	12	
					376.	Jajapur	13	
					377.	Dhenkanal	14	
					378.	Anugul	15	
31.	Sambalpur (212)	107.	Sambalpur	2120	379.	Bargarh	01	Orissa
					380.	Jharsuguda	02	(21)
					381.	Sambalpur	03	
					382.	Debagarh	04	
					383.	Sundargarh	05	
					384.	Sonapur	23	

regional office		sub-regional office			name of district & code			state/u.t. name & code
sl. no	name (code)	sl. no.	name	code	sl. no.	name	code	
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)
					385.	Balangir	24	
31.	Sambalpur (212)	108.	Bhawanipatna	2121	386.	Nuapada	25	Orissa
					387.	Kalahandi	26	(21)
					388.	Rayagada	27	
					389.	Nabarangapur	28	
					390.	Koraput	29	
					391.	Malkangiri	30	
32.	Jalandhar (031)	109.	Jalandhar	0310	392.	Kapurthala	03	Punjab
					393.	Jalandhar	04	(03)
					394.	Nawanshahr	06	
		110.	Amritsar	0311	395.	Amritsar	02	
		111.	Firozpur	0312	396.	Moga	10	
					397.	Firozpur	11	
					398.	Muktsar	12	
					399.	Faridkot	13	
		112.	Hoshiarpur	0313	400.	Gurdaspur	01	
					401.	Hoshiarpur	05	
33.	Ludhiana (032)	113.	Ludhiana	0320	402.	Rupnagar	07	Punjab
					403.	Ludhiana	09	(03)
					404.	S.A.S. nagar (Mohali)	18	
		114.	Bathinda	0321	405.	Bathinda	14	
					406.	Mansa	15	
		115.	Patiala	0322	407.	Fatehgarh Sahib	08	
					408.	Sangrur	16	
					409.	Patiala	17	
34.	Ajmer (081)	116.	Ajmer	0810	410.	Nagaur	14	Rajasthan
					411.	Ajmer	21	(08)
					412.	Bhilwara	24	
		117.	Jodhpur	0811	413.	Jodhpur	15	
					414.	Jaisalmer	16	
					415.	Barmer	17	
					416.	Jalor	18	
					417.	Pali	20	
		118.	Udaipur	0812	418.	Sirohi	19	
					419.	Rajsamand	25	
					420.	Udaipur	26	
					421.	Dungarpur	27	
					422.	Banswara	28	
					423.	Chittaurgarh	29	

regional office		sub-regional office			name of district & code			state/u.t. name & code				
sl. no	name (code)	sl. no.	name	code	sl. no.	name	code					
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)				
35.	Jaipur (082)	119.	Jaipur	0820	424.	Churu	04	Rajasthan (08)				
					425.	Jhunjhunun	05					
					426.	Dausa	11					
					427.	Jaipur	12					
					428.	Sikar	13					
		120.	Alwar	0821	429.	Tonk	22					
					430.	Alwar	06					
					431.	Bharatpur	07					
					432.	Dhaulpur	08					
					433.	Ganganagar	01					
		121.	Ganganagar	0822	434.	Hanumangarh	02					
					435.	Bikaner	03					
					122.	Kota	0823		436.	Karauli	09	
									437.	Sawai Madhopur	10	
438.	Bundi							23				
439.	Kota	30										
440.	Baran	31										
441.	Jhalawar	32										
36.	Gangtok (111)	123.	Gangtok	1110	442.	North (Mongam)	01	Sikkim (11)				
					443.	West (Gyalshing)	02					
					444.	South (Nimachai)	03					
					445.	East (Gangtok)	04					
					37.	Coimbatore (331)	124.		Coimbatore	3310	446.	The Nilgiris	11	Tamil Nadu (33)
447.	Erode	10										
448.	Coimbatore	12										
125.	Dharmapuri	3311	449.	Dharmapuri				05				
			450.	Krishnagiri				31				
			126.	Salem			3312	451.	Salem	08		
452.	Namakkal	09										
127.	Tiruchirappall	3313						453.	Karur	14		
								454.	Tiruchirappalli	15		
								455.	Perambalur	16		
456.	Ariyalur	17										
457.	Pudukkottai	22										
38.	Chennai (332)	128.	Chennai	3320			458.	Thiruvallur	01	Tamil Nadu (33)		
							459.	Chennai	02			
					460.	Kancheepuram	03					
					129.	Cuddalore	3321	461.	Viluppuram		07	
								462.	Cuddalore		18	
		130.	Vellore	3322				463.	Vellore		04	
					464.	Tiruvanamalai	06					
					131.	Pondicherry	3323	465.	Pondicherry		02	Pondicherry

regional office		sub-regional office			name of district & code			state/u.t. name & code
sl. no	name (code)	sl. no.	name	code	sl. no.	name	code	
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)
					466.	Karaikal	04	(34)
39.	Madurai (333)	132.	Madurai	3330	467.	Dindigul	13	Tamil Nadu
					468.	Madurai	24	(33)
					469.	Theni	25	
		133.	Thanjavur	3331	470.	Nagapattinam	19	
					471.	Thiruvarur	20	
					472.	Thanjavur	21	
		134.	Tirunelveli	3332	473.	Toothukudi	28	
					474.	Tirunelveli	29	
					475.	Kanniyakumari	30	
		135.	Virudhunagar	3333	476.	Sivaganga	23	
					477.	Virudhunagar	26	
					478.	Ramanathapuram	27	
40.	Dehradun (051)	136.	Dehradun	0510	479.	Uttarkashi	01	Uttarakhand
					480.	Chamoli	02	(05)
					481.	Rudraprayag	03	
					482.	Tehri Garhwal	04	
					483.	Dehradun (P)	05	
					484.	Garhwal	06	
					485.	Hardwar	13	
					486.	Dehradun (H)	15	
		137.	Almora	0511	487.	Pithoragarh	07	
					488.	Bageshwar	08	
					489.	Almora	09	
					490.	Champawat	10	
					491.	Nainital (P)	11	
					492.	U. Singh Nagar	12	
					493.	Nainital (H)	14	
41.	Agra (091)	138.	Agra	0910	494.	Mathura	14	Uttar Pradesh
					495.	Agra	15	(09)
					496.	Firozabad	16	
					497.	Mainpuri	18	
					498.	Farrukhabad	29	
					499.	Kannauj	30	
					500.	Etawah	31	
					501.	Auraiya	32	
		139.	Aligarh	0911	502.	Bulandshahr	11	
					503.	Aligarh	12	
					504.	Hathras	13	
					505.	Etah	17	
		140.	Meerut	0912	506.	Meerut	07	
					507.	Baghpat	08	
					508.	Ghaziabad	09	
					509.	G. Buddha Nagar	10	

regional office		sub-regional office			name of district & code			state/u.t. name & code			
sl. no	name (code)	sl. no.	name	code	sl. no.	name	code				
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)			
42.	Allahabad (092)	141.	Allahabad	0920	510.	Pratapgarh	43	Uttar Pradesh (09)			
					511.	Kaushambi	44				
					512.	Allahabad	45				
					142.	Azamgarh	0921		513.	Azamgarh	61
									514.	Mau	62
									515.	Ballia	63
									516.	Jaunpur	64
					143.	Faizabad	0922		517.	Faizabad	47
		518.	Ambedkar Nagar	48							
		519.	Sultanpur	49							
		520.	Siddharthnagar	54							
		521.	Basti	55							
		144.	Gorakhpur	0923				522.	S. Kabir Nagar	56	
								523.	Maharajganj	57	
								524.	Gorakhpur	58	
								525.	Kushinagar	59	
								526.	Deoria	60	
					527.	Ghazipur	65				
		145.	Varanasi	0924	528.	Chandauli	66				
					529.	Varanasi	67				
					530.	S. R. Nagar Bhadohi	68				
					531.	Mirzapur	69				
					532.	Sonbhadra	70				
		43.	Bareilly (093)	146.	Bareilly	0930	533.	Budaun	19	Uttar Pradesh (09)	
							534.	Bareilly	20		
							535.	Pilibhit	21		
							536.	Shahjahanpur	22		
							147.	Moradabad	0931		537.	Bijnor	03
				538.	Moradabad	04					
				539.	Rampur	05					
				540.	J. Phule Nagar	06					
				149.	Saharanpur	0932	541.	Saharanpur	01		
148.	Sitapur			0933	542.	Muzaffarnagar	02				
					543.	Kheri	23				
					544.	Sitapur	24				
					545.	Hardoi	25				
					44.	Lucknow (094)	150.	Lucknow	0940	546.	Unnao	26	Uttar Pradesh (09)
547.	Lucknow			27							
548.	Barabanki	46									
549.	Rae Bareli	28									
151.	Fatehpur	0941	550.	Banda			40				
			551.	Chitrakoot			41				
			552.	Fatehpur			42				

regional office		sub-regional office			name of district & code			state/u.t. name & code						
sl. no	name (code)	sl. no.	name	code	sl. no.	name	code							
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)						
44.	Lucknow (094)	152.	Gonda	0942	553.	Bahraich	50	Uttar Pradesh (09)						
					554.	Shrawasti	51							
					555.	Balrampur	52							
		153.	Jhansi	0943	556.	Gonda	53							
					557.	Jalaun	35							
					558.	Jhansi	36							
					559.	Lalitpur	37							
					560.	Hamirpur	38							
					561.	Mahoba	39							
					562.	Kanpur Dehat	33							
		154.	Kanpur	0944	563.	Kanpur Nagar	34							
					45.	Barddhaman (191)	155.		Barddhaman	1910	564.	Barddhaman	09	West Bengal (19)
											156.	Bankura	1911		565.	Bankura	13
157.	Chinsura	1912	566.	Puruliya				14						
158.	Medinipur	1913	567.	Nadia				10						
46.	Kolkata (192)	159.	Kolkata	1920	568.	Hugli	12	West Bengal (19)						
					569.	Paschim Midnapur	15							
					570.	Purba Midnapur	19							
					160.	Howrah	1921		571.	North 24-Parganas	11			
									572.	Kolkata	17			
573.	South 24-Parganas	18												
47.	Maldah (193)	161.	Maldah	1930	574.	Howrah	16	West Bengal (19)						
					575.	Uttar Dinajpur	04							
					576.	Dakshin Dinajpur	05							
					577.	Maldah	06							
		162.	Barhampur	1931	578.	Murshidabad	07							
					579.	Birbhum	08							
					580.	Darjiling	01							
					581.	Jalpaiguri	02							
48.	Port Blair (351)	163.	Siliguri	1932	582.	Koch Bihar	03	A & N Islands (35)						
					583.	South Andaman	01							
					584.	Nicobars	02							
					585.	North and Middle Andaman	03							
					49.	Delhi (071)	164.		Port Blair	3510	586.	North West	01	Delhi (07)
587.	North	02												
588.	North East	03												
589.	East	04												
590.	New Delhi	05												
591.	Central	06												
592.	West	07												
593.	South West	08												
594.	South	09												

APPENDIX - II

LIST OF NSS REGIONS AND THEIR COMPOSITION

sl. no	state/u.t. (code)	NSS region		detailed composition of region			
		code	description	name of district	code	name of district	code
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)
1.	Andaman & Nicobar Islands (35)	351	Andaman & Nicobar Islands	South Andaman Nicobars	(01) (02)	North and Middle Andaman	(03)
2.	Andhra Pradesh (28)	281	Coastal Northern	Srikakulam Vizianagaram Visakhapatnam	(11) (12) (13)	East Godavari West Godavari	(14) (15)
3.		282	Coastal Southern	Krishna Guntur	(16) (17)	Prakasam Nellore	(18) (19)
4.		283	Inland North Western	Adilabad Nizamabad Medak	(01) (02) (04)	Hyderabad Rangareddi Mahbubnagar	(05) (06) (07)
5.		284	Inland North Eastern	Karimnagar Nalgonda	(03) (08)	Warangal Khammam	(09) (10)
6.		285	Inland Southern	Cuddapah Kurnool	(20) (21)	Anantapur Chittoor	(22) (23)
7.	Arunachal Pradesh (12)	121	Arunachal Pradesh	Tawang West Kameng East Kameng Papum Pare Lower Subansiri Upper Subansiri West Siang East Siang	(01) (02) (03) (04) (05) (06) (07) (08)	Upper Siang Dibang Valley Lohit Changlang Tirap Anjaw Kurungkumey Lower Dibang Valley	(09) (10) (11) (12) (13) (14) (15) (16)
8.	Assam (18)	181	Plains Eastern	Lakhimpur Dhemaji Tinsukia Dibrugarh	(12) (13) (14) (15)	Sibsagar Jorhat Golaghat	(16) (17) (18)
9.		182	Plains Western	Kokrajhar Dhubri Goalpara Bongaigaon Barpeta	(01) (02) (03) (04) (05)	Kamrup Nalbari Chirang Baksa Guwahati	(06) (07) (24) (25) (26)
10.		183	Cachar Plain	Karbi Anglong North Cachar Hills Cachar	(19) (20) (21)	Karimganj Hailakandi	(22) (23)
11.		184	Central Brahmaputra Plains	Darrang Marigaon Nagaon	(08) (09) (10)	Sonitpur Udalguri	(11) (27)

sl. no.	state/u.t. (code)	NSS region		detailed composition of region			
		code	description	name of district	code	name of district	code
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)
12.	Bihar (10)	101	Northern	Champanan(W)	(01)	Saharsa	(12)
				Champanan(E)	(02)	Darbhanga	(13)
				Sheohar	(03)	Muzaffarpur	(14)
				Sitamarhi	(04)	Gopalganj	(15)
				Madhubani	(05)	Siwan	(16)
				Supaul	(06)	Saran	(17)
				Araria	(07)	Vaishali	(18)
				Kishanganj	(08)	Samastipur	(19)
				Purnia	(09)	Begusarai	(20)
				Katihar	(10)	Khagaria	(21)
				Madhepura	(11)		
13.		102	Central	Bhagalpur	(22)	Kaimur (Bhabua)	(31)
				Banka	(23)	Rohtas	(32)
				Munger	(24)	Jehanabad	(33)
				Lakhisarai	(25)	Aurangabad	(34)
				Sheikhpura	(26)	Gaya	(35)
				Nalanda	(27)	Nawada	(36)
				Patna	(28)	Jamui	(37)
				Bhojpur	(29)	Arwal	(38)
				Buxar	(30)		
14.	Chandigarh (04)	041	Chandigarh	Chandigarh	(01)		
15.	Chhattisgarh (22)	221	Northern Chhattisgarh	Koriya	(01)	Surguja	(02)
16.		222	Mahanadi Basin	Jashpur	(03)	Rajnandgaon	(09)
				Raigarh	(04)	Durg	(10)
				Korba	(05)	Raipur	(11)
				Janjgir-Champa	(06)	Mahasamund	(12)
				Bilaspur	(07)	Dhamtari	(13)
				Kawardha	(08)		
17.		223	Southern Chhattisgarh	Kanker	(14)	Dantewada	(16)
				Bastar	(15)		
18.	Dadra & Nagar Haveli (26)	261	Dadra & Nagar Haveli	Dadra & Nagar Haveli	(01)		
19.	Daman & Diu (25)	251	Daman & Diu	Diu	(01)	Daman	(02)
20.	Delhi (07)	071	Delhi	North West	(01)	Central	(06)
				North	(02)	West	(07)
				North East	(03)	South West	(08)
				East	(04)	South	(09)
				New Delhi	(05)		
21.	Goa	301	Goa	North Goa	(01)	South Goa	(02)

sl. no.	state/u.t. (code)	NSS region		detailed composition of region			
		code	description	name of district	code	name of district	code
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)
(30)							
22.	Gujarat (24)	241	South Eastern	Panch Mahals Dohad Vadodara Narmada Bharuch	(17) (18) (19) (20) (21)	Surat The Dangs Navsari Valsad	(22) (23) (24) (25)
23.		242	Plains Northern	Mahesana Sabar Kantha Gandhinagar	(04) (05) (06)	Ahmedabad Anand Kheda	(07) (15) (16)
24.		243	Dry areas	Bans Kantha	(02)	Patan	(03)
25.		244	Kachchh	Kachchh	(01)		
26.		245	Saurashtra	Surendranagar Rajkot Jamnagar Porbandar	(08) (09) (10) (11)	Junagadh Amreli Bhavnagar	(12) (13) (14)
27.	Haryana (06)	061	Eastern	Panchkula Ambala Yamunanagar Kurukshetra Kaithal Karnal Panipat	(01) (02) (03) (04) (05) (06) (07)	Sonapat Rohtak Jhajjar Gurgaon Faridabad Mewat	(08) (14) (15) (18) (19) (20)
28.		062	Western	Jind Fatehabad Sirsa Hisar	(09) (10) (11) (12)	Bhiwani Mahendragarh Rewari	(13) (16) (17)
29.	Himachal Pradesh (02)	021	Central	Kangra Kullu Mandi	(02) (04) (05)	Hamirpur Una	(06) (07)
30.		022	Trans Himalayan & Southern	Chamba Lahul & Spiti Bilaspur Solan	(01) (03) (08) (09)	Sirmaur Shimla Kinnaur	(10) (11) (12)
31.	Jammu & Kashmir (01)	011	Mountainous	Jammu	(13)	Kathua	(14)
32.		012	Outer Hills	Doda Udhampur	(09) (10)	Punch Rajauri	(11) (12)
33.		013	Jhelam Valley	Kupwara Baramula Srinagar	(01) (02) (03)	Badgam Pulwama Anantnag	(04) (05) (06)
34.		014	Ladakh	Leh (Ladakh)	(07)	Kargil	(08)

sl. no.	state/u.t. (code)	NSS region		detailed composition of region			
		code	description	name of district	code	name of district	code
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)
35.	Jharkhand (20)	201	Ranchi Plateau	Garhwa Palamu Ranchi Lohardaga Gumla	(01) (02) (14) (15) (16)	Singhbhum(W) Singhbhum (E) Latehar Simdega Saraikela Khaireswan	(17) (18) (19) (20) (22)
36.		202	Hazaribagh Plateau	Chatra Hazaribag Kodarma Giridih Deoghar Godda	(03) (04) (05) (06) (07) (08)	Sahibganj Pakaur Dumka Dhanbad Bokaro Jamtara	(09) (10) (11) (12) (13) (21)
37.	Karnataka (29)	291	Coastal & Ghats	Uttara Kannada Udupi	(10) (16)	Dakshina Kannada	(24)
38.		292	Inland Eastern	Shimoga Chikmagalur	(15) (17)	Hassan Kodagu	(23) (25)
39.		293	Inland Southern	Tumkur Kolar Bangalore Bangalore (Rural)	(18) (19) (20) (21)	Mandya Mysore Chamarajanagar	(22) (26) (27)
40.		294	Inland Northern	Belgaum Bagalkot Bijapur Gulbarga Bidar Raichur Koppal	(01) (02) (03) (04) (05) (06) (07)	Gadag Dharwad Haveri Bellary Chitradurga Davanagere	(08) (09) (11) (12) (13) (14)
41.	Kerala (32)	321	Northern	Kasaragod Kannur Wayanad	(01) (02) (03)	Kozhikode Malappuram Palakkad	(04) (05) (06)
42.		322	Southern	Thrissur Ernakulam Idukki Kottayam	(07) (08) (09) (10)	Alappuzha Pathanamthitta Kollam Thiruvananthapuram	(11) (12) (13) (14)
43.	Lakshadweep (31)	311	Lakshadweep	Lakshadweep	(01)		
44.	Madhya Pradesh (23)	231	Vindhya	Tikamgarh Chhatarpur Panna Satna Rewa	(08) (09) (10) (13) (14)	Umariya Shahdol Sidhi Anuppur	(15) (16) (17) (47)
45.		232	Central	Sagar	(11)	Bhopal	(32)

sl. no.	state/u.t. (code)	NSS region		detailed composition of region			
		code	description	name of district	code	name of district	code
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)
				Damoh	(12)	Sehore	(33)
				Vidisha	(31)	Raisen	(34)
46.	Madhya Pradesh (23)	233	Malwa	Neemuch	(18)	Dewas	(23)
				Mandsaur	(19)	Jhabua	(24)
				Ratlam	(20)	Dhar	(25)
				Ujjain	(21)	Indore	(26)
				Shajapur	(22)	Rajgarh	(30)
47.		234	South	Katni	(38)	Mandla	(42)
				Jabalpur	(39)	Chhindwara	(43)
				Narsimhapur	(40)	Seoni	(44)
				Dindori	(41)	Balaghat	(45)
48.		235	South Western	W. Nimar (Khargoan)	(27)	Betul	(35)
				Barwani	(28)	Harda	(36)
				E. Nimar (Khandwa)	(29)	Hoshangabad	(37)
						Burhampur	(48)
49.		236	Northern	Sheopur	(01)	Datia	(05)
				Morena	(02)	Shivpuri	(06)
				Bhind	(03)	Guna	(07)
				Gwalior	(04)	Ashoknagar	(46)
50.	Maharashtra (27)	271	Coastal	Thane	(21)	Raigarh	(24)
				Mumbai	(22)	Ratnagiri	(32)
				Suburban		Sindhudurg	(33)
				Mumbai	(23)		
51.		272	Inland Western	Pune	(25)	Satara	(31)
				Ahmadnagar	(26)	Kolhapur	(34)
				Solapur	(30)	Sangli	(35)
52.		273	Inland Northern	Nandurbar	(01)	Jalgaon	(03)
				Dhule	(02)	Nashik	(20)
53.		274	Inland Central	Nanded	(15)	Aurangabad	(19)
				Hingoli	(16)	Bid	(27)
				Parbhani	(17)	Latur	(28)
				Jalna	(18)	Osmanabad	(29)
54.		275	Inland Eastern	Buldana	(04)	Wardha	(08)
				Akola	(05)	Nagpur	(09)
				Washim	(06)	Yavatmal	(14)
				Amravati	(07)		
55.		276	Eastern	Bhandara	(10)	Gadchiroli	(12)
				Gondiya	(11)	Chandrapur	(13)
56.	Manipur (14)	141	Plains	Bishnupur	(04)	Imphal West	(06)
				Thoubal	(05)	Imphal East	(07)
57.		142	Hills	Senapati	(01)	Ukhrul	(08)

sl. no.	state/u.t. (code)	NSS region		detailed composition of region			
		code	description	name of district	code	name of district	code
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)
				Tamenglong	(02)	Chandel	(09)
				Churachandpur	(03)		
58.	Meghalaya (17)	171	Meghalaya	West Garo Hills	(01)	Ri Bhoi	(05)
				East Garo Hills	(02)	East Khasi Hills	(06)
				South Garo Hills	(03)	Jaintia Hills	(07)
				West Khasi Hills	(04)		
59.	Mizoram (15)	151	Mizoram	Mamit	(01)	Serchip	(05)
				Kolasib	(02)	Lunglei	(06)
				Aizwal	(03)	Lawngtlai	(07)
				Champhai	(04)	Saiha	(08)
60.	Nagaland (13)	131	Nagaland	Mon	(01)	Kohima	(07)
				Tuensang	(02)	Phek	(08)
				Mokokchung	(03)	Kiphire	(09)
				Zunheboto	(04)	Longleng	(10)
				Wokha	(05)	Peren	(11)
				Dimapur	(06)		
61.	Orissa (21)	211	Coastal	Baleshwar	(08)	Jajapur	(13)
				Bhadrak	(09)	Nayagarh	(16)
				Kendrapara	(10)	Khordha	(17)
				Jagatsinghapur	(11)	Puri	(18)
				Cuttack	(12)		
62.		212	Southern	Ganjam	(19)	Nuapada	(25)
				Gajapati	(20)	Kalahandi	(26)
				Kandhamal	(21)	Rayagada	(27)
				(Phoolbani)		Nabarangapur	(28)
				Baudh	(22)	Koraput	(29)
				Sonapur	(23)	Malkangiri	(30)
				Balangir	(24)		
63.		213	Northern	Bargarh	(01)	Kendujhar	(06)
				Jharsuguda	(02)	Mayurbhanj	(07)
				Sambalpur	(03)	Dhenkanal	(14)
				Debagarh	(04)	Anugul	(15)
				Sundargarh	(05)		
64.	Pondicherry (34)	341	Pondi- cherry	Yanam	(01)	Mahe	(03)
				Pondicherry	(02)	Karaikal	(04)
65.	Punjab (03)	031	Northern	Gurdaspur	(01)	Hoshiarpur	(05)
				Amritsar	(02)	Nawanshahr	(06)
				Kapurthala	(03)	Rupnagar	(07)
				Jalandhar	(04)	S.A.S. nagar (Mohali)	(18)
66.		032	Southern	Fatehgarh Sahib	(08)	Faridkot	(13)
				Ludhiana	(09)	Bathinda	(14)

sl. no.	state/u.t. (code)	NSS region		detailed composition of region			
		code	description	name of district	code	name of district	code
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)
				Moga	(10)	Mansa	(15)
				Firozpur	(11)	Sangrur	(16)
				Muktsar	(12)	Patiala	(17)
67.	Rajasthan (08)	081	Western	Bikaner	(03)	Jalor	(18)
				Jodhpur	(15)	Sirohi	(19)
				Jaisalmer	(16)	Pali	(20)
				Barmer	(17)		
68.		082	North-Eastern	Alwar	(06)	Dausa	(11)
				Bharatpur	(07)	Jaipur	(12)
				Dhaulpur	(08)	Ajmer	(21)
				Karauli	(09)	Tonk	(22)
				Sawai Madhopur	(10)	Bhilwara	(24)
69.		083	Southern	Rajsamand	(25)	Dungarpur	(27)
				Udaipur	(26)	Banswara	(28)
70.		084	South-Eastern	Bundi	(23)	Baran	(31)
				Chittaurgarh	(29)	Jhalawar	(32)
				Kota	(30)		
71.		085	Northern	Ganganagar	(01)	Jhunjhunun	(05)
				Hanumangarh	(02)	Sikar	(13)
				Churu	(04)	Nagaur	(14)
72.	Sikkim (11)	111	Sikkim	North (Mongam)	(01)	South (Nimachai)	(03)
				West (Gyalshing)	(02)	East (Gangtok)	(04)
73.	Tamil Nadu (33)	331	Coastal Northern	Thiruvallur	(01)	Tiruvanamalai	(06)
				Chennai	(02)	Viluppuram	(07)
				Kancheepuram	(03)	Cuddalore	(18)
				Vellore	(04)		
74.		332	Coastal	Karur	(14)	Nagapattinam	(19)
				Tiruchirappalli	(15)	Thiruvarur	(20)
				Perambalur	(16)	Thanjavur	(21)
				Ariyalur	(17)	Pudukkottai	(22)
75.		333	Southern	Dindigul	(13)	Ramanathapuram	(27)
				Sivaganga	(23)	Toothukudi	(28)
				Madurai	(24)	Tirunelveli	(29)
				Theni	(25)	Kanniyakumari	(30)
				Virudhunagar	(26)		
76.		334	Inland	Dharmapuri	(05)	The Nilgiris	(11)
				Salem	(08)	Coimbatore	(12)
				Namakkal	(09)	Krishnagiri	(31)
				Erode	(10)		
77.	Tripura (16)	161	Tripura	West Tripura	(01)	Dhalai	(03)
				South Tripura	(02)	North Tripura	(04)
78.	Uttarakhand (05)	051	Uttarakhand	Uttarkashi	(01)	Almora	(09)
				Chamoli	(02)	Champawat	(10)
				Rudraprayag	(03)	Nainital (P)	(11)
				Tehri Garhwal	(04)	Udham Singh	(12)

sl. no.	state/u.t. (code)	NSS region		detailed composition of region			
		code	description	name of district	code	name of district	code
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)
				Dehradun (P)	(05)	Nagar	
				Garhwal	(06)	Hardwar	(13)
				Pithoragarh	(07)	Nainital (H)	(14)
				Bageshwar	(08)	Dehradun (H)	(15)
79.	Uttar Pradesh (09)	091	Northern Upper Ganga Plains	Saharanpur	(01)	J Phule Nagar	(06)
				Muzaffarnagar	(02)	Meerut	(07)
				Bijnor	(03)	Baghpat	(08)
				Moradabad	(04)	Ghaziabad	(09)
				Rampur	(05)	G. Buddha Nagar	(10)
80.		092	Central	Sitapur	(24)	Kanpur Dehat	(33)
				Hardoi	(25)	Kanpur Nagar	(34)
				Unnao	(26)	Fatehpur	(42)
				Lucknow	(27)	Barabanki	(46)
				Rae Bareli	(28)		
81.		093	Eastern	Pratapgarh	(43)	Gorakhpur	(58)
				Kaushambi	(44)	Kushinagar	(59)
				Allahabad	(45)	Deoria	(60)
				Faizabad	(47)	Azamgarh	(61)
				Ambedkar Nag.	(48)	Mau	(62)
				Sultanpur	(49)	Ballia	(63)
				Bahraich	(50)	Jaunpur	(64)
				Shrawasti	(51)	Ghazipur	(65)
				Balrampur	(52)	Chandauli	(66)
				Gonda	(53)	Varanasi	(67)
				Siddharthnagar	(54)	S.R.Nagar(Bhadohi)	(68)
				Basti	(55)	Mirzapur	(69)
				S. Kabir Nagar	(56)	Sonbhadra	(70)
				Maharajganj	(57)		
82.		094	Southern	Jalaun	(35)	Mahoba	(39)
				Jhansi	(36)	Banda	(40)
				Lalitpur	(37)	Chitrakoot	(41)
				Hamirpur	(38)		
83.		095	Southern Upper Ganga Plains	Bulandshahr	(11)	Bareilly	(20)
				Aligarh	(12)	Pilibhit	(21)
				Hathras	(13)	Shahjahanpur	(22)
				Mathura	(14)	Kheri	(23)
				Agra	(15)	Farrukhabad	(29)
				Firozabad	(16)	Kannauj	(30)
				Etah	(17)	Etawah	(31)
				Mainpuri	(18)	Auraiya	(32)
				Budaun	(19)		
84.	West Bengal (19)	191	Himalayan	Darjiling	(01)	Koch Bihar	(03)
				Jalpaiguri	(02)		
85.		192	Eastern Plains	Uttar Dinajpur	(04)	Murshidabad	(07)
				Dakshin Dinajpur	(05)	Birbhum	(08)
				Maldah	(06)	Nadia	(10)
86.		193	Southern Plains	North 24-Parganas	(11)	South 24-Parganas	(18)
				Kolkata	(17)		
87.		194	Central	Bardhaman	(09)	Howrah	(16)

sl. no.	state/u.t. (code)	NSS region		detailed composition of region			
		code	description	name of district	code	name of district	code
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)
			Plains	Hugli	(12)		
88.		195	Western Plains	Bankura	(13)	Paschim Midnapur	(15)
				Puruliya	(14)	Purba Midnapur	(19)